08-25-00

A

Please type a plus (+) inside this box →

PTO/SB/29 (12/97)
Approved for use through 09/30/00. OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))

Attorney Docket No.	8002-059-999	Total Pages	164
First Named Inventor or Application Identifier			
Bermudes, David G.			
Express Mail Label No.	EL 501 633 816 US		

APPLICATION ELEMENTS

See *MPEP chapter 600 concerning utility patent application contents.*

1. ☒ Fee Transmittal Form
   Submit an original, and a duplicate for fee processing)
2. ☒ Specification [Total Pages 119]
   (preferred arrangement set forth below)
   - -Descriptive title of the Invention
   - -Cross Reference to Related Applications
   - -Statement Regarding Fed sponsored R&D
   - -Reference to Microfiche Appendix
   - -Background of the Invention
   - -Brief Summary of the Invention
   - -Brief Description of the Drawings *(if filed)*
   - -Detailed Description of the Invention (including drawings, *if filed*)
   - -Claim(s)
   - -Abstract of the Disclosure
3. ☒ Drawing(s) *(35 USC 113)* [Total Sheets 41]
4. ☒ Oath or Declaration [Total Sheets 04]
   a. ☒ Newly executed (original or copy)
   b. ☐ Copy from a prior application (37 CFR 1.63(d))
   (for continuation/divisional with Box 17 completed)
   [Note Box 5 below]
   i. ☐ DELETION OF INVENTOR(S)
   Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s) named in the prior application, see 37 CFR 1.63(d)(2) and 1.33 (b).
5. ☐ Incorporation By Reference *(useable if Box 4b is checked)*
   The entire disclosure of the prior application, from which a copy of the oath or declaration is supplied under Box 4b, is considered as being part of the disclosure of the accompanying application and is hereby incorporated by reference therein.

ADDRESS TO: **Assistant Commissioner for Patents**
Box Patent Application
Washington, DC 20231

6. ☐ Microfiche Computer Program *(Appendix)*
7. ☒ Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission
   (if applicable, all necessary)
   a. ☒ Computer Readable Copy
   b. ☒ Paper Copy (identical to computer copy)
   c. ☒ Statement verifying identity of above copies

ACCOMPANYING APPLICATION PARTS

8. ☐ Assignment Papers (cover sheet & document(s))
9. ☐ 37 CFR 3.73(b) Statement ☐ Power of Attorney
   (when there is an assignee)
10. ☐ English Translation Document *(if applicable)*
11. ☐ Information Disclosure ☐ Copies of IDS
    Statement (IDS)/PTO-1449 Citations
12. ☐ Preliminary Amendment
13. ☒ Return Receipt Postcard (MPEP 503)
    (Should be specifically itemized)
14. ☐ Small Entity ☐ Statement filed in prior application,
    Statement(s) Status still proper and desired
15. ☐ Certified Copy of Priority Document(s)
    (if foreign priority is claimed)
16. ☐ Other:

17. **If a CONTINUING APPLICATION,** *check appropriate box and supply the requisite information:*
☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No: filed .

18. CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

☒ Customer Number or Bar Code Label 20583 *(Insert Customer No. or Attach bar code label here)* or ☐ Correspondence address below

NAME					
ADDRESS					
CITY		STATE		ZIP CODE	
COUNTRY		TELEPHONE		FAX	

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.2 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box Patent Application, Washington, DC 20231.

Express Mail No.:EL 501 633 816 US

PENNIE & EDMONDS LLP
COUNSELLORS AT LAW
1155 Avenue of the Americas
New York, N.Y. 10036-2711
(212) 790-9090

ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. 8002-059-999

Date: August 24, 2000

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Box PATENT APPLICATION
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

The following utility patent application is enclosed for filing:

Applicant(s): David G. Bermudes, Ivan C. King, Caroline A. Clairmont, Stanley L. Lin and Michael Belcourt

Executed on: August 23, 2000

Title of Invention: COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TUMOR-TARGETED DELIVERY OF EFFECTOR MOLECULES

PATENT APPLICATION FEE VALUE

TYPE	NO. FILED	LESS	EXTRA	EXTRA RATE	FEE
Total Claims	170	-20	150	$18.00 each	$ 2,700.00
Independent	19	-3	16	$78.00 each	$ 1,248.00
			Minimum Fee		$ 690.00
			Multiple Dependency Fee If Applicable ($260.00)		$ 260.00
			Total		$ 4,898.00
			50% Reduction for Independent Inventor, Nonprofit Organization or Small Business Concern (a verified statement as to the applicant's status is attached)		- $ 0.00
			Total Filing Fee		$ 4,898.00

☒ Priority of provisional application nos. 60/157,637, 60/157,581 and 60/167,500 filed on October 4, 2000 is claimed under 35 U.S.C. § 119(e).

Please charge the required fee to Pennie & Edmonds LLP Deposit Account No. 16-1150. A copy of this sheet is enclosed.

Respectfully submitted,

Geraldine Frances Baldwin

31,232

Geraldine F. Baldwin (Reg. No.)
PENNIE & EDMONDS LLP

Enclosure

This form is not for use with continuation, divisional, re-issue, design or plant patent applications.

Express Mail No.: EL 501 633 816 US

COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TUMOR-TARGETED DELIVERY OF EFFECTOR MOLECULES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TUMOR-TARGETED DELIVERY OF EFFECTOR MOLECULES

This application claims priority to U.S. provisional patent applications Nos. 60/157,500, 60/157,581, and 60/157,637, filed on October 4, 1999, the contents of each of which is incorporated herein by reference its entirety.

1. FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to the delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) to a solid tumor for the treatment or inhibition of the tumor. More particularly, the invention is related to the preparation and use of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as, *e.g.*, *Salmonella,* as a vector for the delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) to an appropriate site of action, *e.g.*, the site of a solid tumor. Specifically, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of the invention is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe which is modified to encode one or more primary effector molecule(s). The primary effector molecule(s) of the invention include members of the TNF cyokine family, anti-angiogenic factors, and cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides. The primary effector molecules of the invention are useful, for example, to treat a solid tumor cancer such as a carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, or metastases derived from these tumors. The invention further relates to the surprising discovery that primary effector molecule(s) such as TNF family members, anti-angiogenic factors, and cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides can be delivered locally to tumors by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria with reduced toxicity and reduced immunological complications to the host. The invention also relates to the delivery of one or more optional effector molecule(s) (termed "secondary effector molecules") which may be delivered by the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria in conjunction with the primary effector molecule(s). The secondary effector molecule(s) provide additional anti-tumor therapeutic activity, enhance release of the primary effector molecule(s) from the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, and/or enhance uptake of the primary effector molecule(s) at the appropriate site of action, *e.g.*, at the site of a solid tumor.

2. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

A neoplasm, or tumor, is a neoplastic mass resulting from abnormal cell growth, which can be benign or malignant. Benign tumors generally remain localized. Malignant tumors generally have the potential to invade and destroy neighboring body tissue and spread to distant sites and cause death (for review, see Robins and Angell, 1976, *Basic*

Pathology, 2d Ed., W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, pp. 68-122). A tumor is said to have metastatized when it has spread from one organ or tissue to another.

A major problem in the chemotherapy of solid tumor cancers is delivery of therapeutic agents, such as drugs, in sufficient concentrations to eradicate tumor cells while at the same time minimizing damage to normal cells. Thus, studies in many laboratories are directed toward the design of biological delivery systems, such as antibodies, cytokines, and viruses for targeted delivery of drugs, pro-drug converting enzymes, and/or genes into tumor cells (see, *e.g.*, Crystal, R.G., 1995, Science 270:404-410).

2.1. CELLULAR IMMUNITY AND CYTOKINES

One strategy for the treatment of cancer involves enhancing or activating a cellular immune response. Successful induction of a cellular immune response directed toward autologous tumors offers several advantages over conventional chemotherapy: 1) immune recognition is highly specific, being directed exclusively toward tumors; 2) growth at metastatic sites can be suppressed through immune surveillance; 3) the diversity of immune response and recognition can compensate for different resistance mechanisms employed by tumor cells; 4) clonal expansion of cytotoxic T cells can occur more rapidly than the expanding tumor, resulting in antitumor mechanisms which ultimately overwhelm the tumor; and 5) a memory response can suppress disease recurrence in its earliest stages, prior to physical detection. Clinical studies of responding patients have borne out results from animal models demonstrating that successful immunotherapy involves the activation of CD8+ T cells (class I response), although evidence exists for participation of CD4+ T cells, macrophages, and NK cells. See, *e.g.*, Chapoval *et al.*, 1998, J. Immunol. 161:6977-6984; Gollub *et al.*, 1998, J. Clin. Invest. 102:561-575; Kikuchi et al., 1999, Int. J. Cancer 80:425-430; Pan et al., 1995, Int. J. Cancer 80:425-430; Saffran *et al.*, 1998, Cancer Gene Ther. 5:321-330; and Zimmermann *et al.*,1999, Eur. J. Immunol. 29:284-290.

2.2. TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR (TNF) FAMILY OF CYTOKINES

The best characterized member of the TNF family is TNF-α. TNF-α is known to exert pleiotropic effects on the immune system. TNF-α is a cytokine which can exert potent cytotoxic effects directly on tumor cells. TNF-α is generally thought to exert its anti-tumor effects via other mechanisms such as stimulation of proliferation and differentiation, and prevention of apoptosis in monocytes (*see, e.g.*, Mangan *et al.*, 1991, J. Immunol. 146:1541-1546; and Ostensen *et al.*,1987, J. Immunol. 138:4185-4191), promotion of tissue factor-like procoagulant activity and suppression of endothelial cell surface anticoagulant activity, ultimately leading to clot formation within the tumor (reviewed in Beutler and Cerami, 1989, Ann. Rev. Immunol. 7:625-655; and Vassalli, P.,

1992, Ann. Rev. Immunol. 10:411-452). However, as a result of these properties, systemic administration of TNF-α results in lethal consequences in the host due to disseminated intravascular coagulation.

Other cytokines have also been implicated in anti-tumor responses. IL-2 is a class I cytokine and is also thought to play a role in anti-tumor response. For example, spontaneously regressing melanomas have been associated with elevated intratumoral levels of TNF-α and IL-2. See, *e.g.*, Beutler and Cerami, 1989, Annu. Rev. Immunol. 7:625-655; Lowes *et al.*, 1997, J. Invest. Dermatol. 108:914-919; Mangan *et al.*, 1991, J. Immunol. 146:1541-1546; Scheruich *et al.*, 1987, J. Immunol. 138: 1786-1790.

Both TNF-α and IL-2 aid in lymphocyte homing, and IL-2 has been shown to induce tumor infiltration of natural killer (NK) cells, T-cells, and lymphokine activated killer (LAK) cells (see, *e.g.*, Etter *et al.*, 1998, Cytokine 10:395-403; Reinhardt *et al.*, 1997, Blood 89:3837-46; Chen *et al.*, 1997, J. Neuropathol. Exp. Neurol. 56:541-50; Vora *et al.*, 1996, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 105:155-62; Luscinskas *et al.*, 1996, J. Immunol. 157:326-35; Kjaergaard *et al.*, 1998, Scand. J. Immunol. 47, 532-540; Johansson *et al.*, 1996, Nat. Immun. 15:87-97; and Watanabe *et al.*, 1997, Am. J. Pathol. 150:1869-80). In the presence of both TNF-α and IL-2, the cytolytic activity of NK and LAK cells is increased, even when directed against TNF-insensitive cell lines (see, *e.g,* Ostensen *et al.*, 1987, J. Immunol. 138:4185-4191). However, therapeutic levels of IL-2 have also been shown to be toxic to the host.

Clearly, dose-limiting toxicity from systemic cytokine administration poses a significant barrier to realizing the potential of cytokines in cancer therapy. Moreover, systemic cytokine delivery can result in decreased homing of syngeneic T cells, thus opposing targeted immunotherapy, in addition to resulting in unwanted clinical side effects. See Addison *et al.*, 1998, Gene Ther. 5:1400-1409; Albertini *et al.*, 1997, Clin. Cancer Res. 3:1277-1288; Becker *et al.*, 1996, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. *USA* 93:7826-7831; Book *et al.*, 1998, J. Neuroimmunol. 92:50-59; Cao *et al.*, 1998, J. Cancer Res. Clin. Oncol. 124:88-92; D'Angelica *et al.*, 1999, Cancer Immunol. Immunother. 47:265-271; Deszo *et al.*, 1996, Clin. Cancer Res. 2:1543-1552; Kjaergaard *et al.*, 1998, Scand. J. Immunol. 47:532-540; Ostensen *et al.*, 1987, J. Immunol. 138:4185-4191; and Schirrmacher *et al.*, 1998, Clin. Cancer Res. 4:2635-2645.

2.3. DELIVERY OF CYTOKINES

Recent experimental animal and clinical studies have attempted to bypass systemic toxicity of cytokines and administer higher doses, through sub-systemic or alternative methods of delivery of cytokines. In murine models, sarcoma-180 tumors have been treated with administration of a fusogenic liposome-encapsulated TNF-α gene, and systemic administration of polyethylene glycol-encapsulated TNF-α, which could localize

to the tumor vasculature (see Tsutsumi *et al.*, 1996, Jpn. J. Cancer Res. 87:1078-1085). Sensitization of tumors to TNF-α by endothelial-monocyte-activating polypeptide II has also been reported (see, Marvin *et al.*, 1999, J. Surg. Res. 63:248-255; Wu *et al.*, 1996, Cancer Res.59:205-212).

In clinical studies, complete tumor eradication has been observed following high-dose TNF-α administration to patients via isolated limb perfusion, in combination with interferon-α or melphalan. However, this technique presents severe risks to the patient if the cytokines are not completely removed following treatment. Further, these treatments require limb isolation, which, in itself presents risks to the patient. See Eggermont *et al.*, 1997, Semin. Oncol. 24:547-555 Fraker et al., 1995, Cancer J. Sci. Am. 1:122-130; Lejeune *et al.*,1998, Curr. Opin. Immunol. 10:573-580; Marvin *et al.*, 1996, J. Surg. Res. 63:248-255; Mizuguchi *et al.*, 1998, Cancer Res. 58:5725-5730; Tsutsumi *et al.*, 1996, Jpn. J. Cancer Res. 87:1078-1085; and Wu *et al.*,1996, Cancer Res. 59, 205-212.

Previous studies by Carrier *et al*, 1992, J. Immunol. 148:1176-81, Saltzman *et al.*, 1997, Cancer Biother. Radiopharm. 12:37-45, Saltzman *et al.*, 1997, J. Pediat. Surgery 32:301-306 have reported the use of attenuated *Salmonella* strains to deliver IL-1ß (Carrier) and IL-2 (Saltzman) directly to livers and spleens, the natural sites of *Salmonella* infection, to serve as vaccine strains or affect hepatic metastases. Saltzman's studies used oral administration of *Salmonella* in which bacteria are taken up by GALT (gut associated lymphoid tissue) and transported to liver and spleen. However, these infections are limited to the natural sites of infection.

2.4. ANGIOGENESIS AND TUMORIGENESIS

Another strategy for the treatment of cancer involves the inhibition of angiogenesis. Angiogenesis is the process of growth of new capillaries from preexisting blood vessels. New capillaries are formed by a process in which the endothelial cells of the preexisting blood vessel, using proteolytic enzymes such as matrix metalloproteases, degrade the basement membranes in their vicinity, proliferate, migrate into surrounding stromal tissue and form microtubes . The process of angiogenesis is very tightly regulated by an interplay between negative and positive factors, and in adults is normally restricted to the female reproductive cycle and wound repair (Malonne *et al.*, 1999, Clin. Exp. Metastasis 17:1-14). Aberrant or abnormal regulation of angiogenesis has been implicated in many human disorders, including diabetic retinopathy, psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, cardiovascular disease, and tumorigenesis (Folkman, 1995, Nat. Med. 1:27-31).

Angiogenesis is a critical process for tumor growth and metastasis. Tumor formation is divided into two stages, the prevascular and vascular stages. Studies have shown that cells of prevascular tumors proliferate as rapidly as do cells from vascularized tumors. However, prevascular tumors rarely grow to more than 2-3 mm^3 because of the

existence of an equilibrium between cell proliferation and cell death, the latter resulting from the hypoxic nature of the prevascular tumor (Folkman, 1995, Nat. Med. 1:27-31). The switch from the prevascular to vascular stage requires a shift in the balance of the regulatory factors of angiogenesis from a net balance favoring negative factors to one in which the positive factors, such as fibroblast growth factor (FGF) and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), predominate (Cao, 1998, Prog. Mol. Subcell. Biol. 20:161-176). The shift in balance between regulatory factors is a result of the up-regulation of the angiogenic factors and the simultaneous down-regulation of anti-angiogenic factors (Folkman, 1995, N. Eng. J. Med. 333:1757-1763).

2.5. ANTI-ANGIOGENIC FACTORS

Anti-angiogenic factors were postulated to exist on the basis of several related phenomena that led to the conclusion that primary tumors often inhibited the growth of their metastases (Cao, 1998, Prog. Mol. Subcell. Biol. 20:161-176). The first of these factors to be isolated was mouse angiostatin, a 38 kDa proteolytic fragment of plasminogen that is released into the circulation by primary Lewis lung carcinoma tumors and prevents the growth of secondary metastases (O'Reilly *et al.*, 1994, Cell 79:315-328). In humans, peptides of 40, 42 and 45 kDa produced by the limited proteolysis of plasminogen with metalloelastase have anti-angiogenic activity comparable to mouse angiostatin (O'Reilly *et al.*, 1994, Cell 79:315-328). Plasminogen itself has no such activity. It is also thought that tumor-associated macrophages are responsible for the production of angiostatin, since tumor cells themselves have no detectable angiostatin mRNA. Macrophage metalloelastase expression is induced by granulocyte colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) secreted by the tumor cells (Dong *et al.*, 1997, Cell 88:801-810). In certain tumors, angiostatin production is catalyzed by serine proteases rather than metalloelastase, where serine proteases are produced directly by the tumor cells (Gately *et al.*, 1997, Cancer Res. 56:4887-4890). Administration of angiostatin at a concentration of 100mg/kg/day to experimental mice with primary tumors resulted in a strong inhibition of tumor growth without toxic side effects. The tumors regrew within 2 weeks of cessation of the angiostatin treatment, indicating that the tumors regress into a dormant state rather than completely die as a result of the treatment (O'Reilly *et al.*, 1996, Nat. Med. 2:689-692).

After the discovery of angiostatin, other angiogenesis inhibitors, including several angiogenesis-inhibiting peptides, were discovered and isolated. A more potent inhibitor of angiogenesis than angiostatin is kringle 5, a peptide comprising the fifth kringle domain of plasminogen (angiostatin comprises kringle domains 1-4). Kringle 5 can be produced by the proteolysis of plasminogen, and recombinant forms are also active (Cao *et al.*, 1997, J. Biol. Chem. 272:22924-22928).

Endostatin was isolated in a manner similar to the isolation of angiostatin (O'Reilly et al., 1997, Cell 88:1-20), the source being a murine hemangioendothelioma rather than a Lewis lung carcinoma. The peptide has an apparent molecular mass of 20 kDa whose sequence corresponds to the C-terminal of collagen XVIII (O'Reilly *et al.*, 1997, Cell 88:1-20), a region called NC1 that is divergent among various collagen molecules (Oh *et al.*, 1994, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 91:4229-4233; and Rehn *et al.*, 1994, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 91:4234-4238). In mice, the growth of Lewis lung carcinoma metastases is suppressed by the administration 0.3 mg/kg/day of recombinant endostatin, and the primary tumor regresses to a dormant state when the peptide is administered at 20 mg/kg/day. Functional recombinant endostatin can be produced from inclusion bodies, either *in vitro* by denaturation and refolding, or *in vivo* by the sustained release of subcutaneously administered endostatin inclusion body preparations (O'Reilly *et al.*, 1997, Cell 88:1-20). An alternative method of endostatin delivery consisting of intramuscular administration of an endostatin expression plasmid results in only the partial inhibition of tumor growth in a mouse model system (Blezinger *et al.*, 1999, Nat. Biotech. 17:343-348). Similarly, endostatin or angiotensin-encoding plasmids complexed to liposomes that were delivered intravenously resulted in a partial inhibition of tumor growth in a nude mouse model of breast cancer (Chen *et al.*, 1999, Cancer Res. 59:3308-3312).

Recently, a novel anti-angiogenic activity has been attributed to a C-terminal truncation peptide of the Serpin (Serine Protease Inhibitor) anti-thrombin (O'Reilly *et al.*, 1999, Science 285:1926-1928). Full length anti-thrombin has no inherent anti-angiogenic activity, but upon cleavage of the C-terminal reactive loop of the protein by thrombin, anti-thrombin acquires potent angiogenic activity. The proteolytic fragment is referred to hereinafter as anti-angiogenic anti-thrombin.

Other angiogenesis-inhibiting peptides known in the art include the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin (Homandberg *et al.*, 1985, J. Am. Pathol. 120:327-332); the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin (Clapp *et al.*, 1993, Endocrinology 133:1292-1299); and the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4 (Gupta *et al.*, 1995, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:7799-7803).

In addition to those naturally produced proteolytic fragments that have demonstrated anti-angiogenic effects, several synthetic peptides that correspond to regions of known extracellular matrix proteins have been assessed for activity in inhibiting angiogenesis. Synthetic peptides which have been demonstrated to be functional endothelial inhibitors, *i.e.* angiogenesis inhibitors, include a 13 amino acid peptide corresponding to a fragment of platelet factor-4 (Maione *et al.*, 1990, Cancer Res. 51:2077-2083); a 14 amino acid peptide corresponding to a fragment of collagen I (Tolma *et al.*, 1993, J. Cell Biol. 122:497-511); a 19 amino acid peptide corresponding to a fragment of Thrombospondin I (Tolsma *et al.*, 1993, J. Cell Biol. 122:497-511); and a 20 amino acid

peptide corresponding to a fragment of SPARC (Sage *et al.*, 1995, J. Cell. Biochem. 57:1329-1334), a secreted cysteine-rich extracellular matrix glycoprotein whose expression in human melanoma cells leads to reduced cellular invasion *in vitro* and reduced tumorigenicity in an *in vivo* nude mouse model (Ledda et al., 1996, Nature Med. 3:171-176) . Other peptides of less than 10 amino acids that inhibit angiogenesis and correspond to fragments of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen, and EGF have also been described (see the review by Cao, 1998, Prog. Mol. Subcell. Biol. 20:161-176).

The small fibronectin peptides that inhibit angiogenesis generally comprise the motif RGD. RGD is a peptide motif (amino acids Arg-Gly-Asp) used by proteins for recognition and binding to integrin molecules. The expression of integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$ is associated with angiogenic blood vessels and inhibition of its activity by monoclonal antibodies blocks vascularization (Brooks *et al.*, 1994, Science 264:569-571). This has been confirmed by a study showing that the administration of cyclic pentapeptides containing the RGD motif inhibits the activity of vitronectin receptor-type integrins and block retinal neovascularization (Hammes *et al.*, 1996, Nature Medicine 2:529-533). The anti-angiogenic effect of integrin blockers such as cyclic pentapeptides and monoclonal antibodies has been shown to promote tumor regression by inducing the apoptosis of angiogenic blood vessels (Brooks *et al.*, 1994, Cell 79:1157-1164). Peptides comprising the RGD motif, and another integrin binding motif, NGR (amino acids Asn-Gln-Arg), showed markedly enhanced anti-tumor activity

The inhibition of the activity of another type of cell surface receptor, namely the urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA) receptor, also results in the inhibition of angiogenesis. The uPA receptor, upon ligand binding, initiates a proteolytic cascade that is necessary for the basement membrane invasion step of angiogenesis. Inhibition of the uPA receptor by receptor antagonists inhibits angiogenesis, tumor growth (Min *et al.*, 1996, Cancer Res. 56: 2428-2433) and metastasis (Crowley *et al.*, 1993, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:5021-5025). Such antagonists have been identified by bacteriophage peptide display of random peptides (Goodson *et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 91:7129-7133). Dominant negative forms of the receptor's ligand, uPA, have also been identified (Min *et al.*, 1996, Cancer Res. 56: 2428-2433).

While the discovery of angiostatin, endostatin and other anti-angiogenic peptides provided an exciting new approach for cancer therapy, the reality of a course of treatment involving one or more of these peptides is the impracticality of the production of immense amounts of peptides (stemming from the cost and/or labor of having to produce, for an average person of 65 kg or 143 lbs, approximately 1.3 or 6.5 grams of protein per day, depending on the peptide) and the duration of the treatment (which has to be sustained if the tumor is to stay in regression). It is thought that the two main reasons that these peptides have to be administered in such large quantities are that, first, a majority are

degraded in the blood stream and, second, of the molecules that do survive degradation only a very limited proportion make their way to the tumor. Thus, it would be a great advantage to the field of tumor therapy if anti-angiogenic proteins or peptides could be delivered more efficiently to the tumor and in a more cost-effective and patient-friendly manner.

2.6. BACTERIOCIN FAMILY

Colicin E3 (referred to hereinafter as ColE3) is a bacteriocin, *i.e.*, a bacterial proteinaceous toxin with selective activity, in that its host is immune to the toxin. Bacteriocins may be encoded by the host genome or by a plasmid, may have a broad or narrow range of hosts, and may have a simple structure comprising one or two subunits or may be a multi-subunit structure (Konisky, 1982, Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 36:125-144). In addition, a bacteriocin host has an immunity against the bacteriocin. The immunity is found in all cells of a given host population, even those that do not express the bacteriocin.

The cytotoxicity of ColE3 results from its inhibition of protein synthesis (Nomura, 1963, Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 28:315-324). The target of ColE3 activity is the 16S component of bacterial ribosomes, which is common to the 30S and 70S ribosomes (Bowman *et al.*, 1971, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. 68:964-968), and the activity results in the degradation of the ribosome (Meyhack, 1970, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA). ColE3 activity is unique among RNAses, in that it does not cause the overall degradation of RNA, but cleaves mRNA molecules 49 nucleotides from the end, resulting in the separation of the rRNA from the mRNA and thereby inhibiting translation. The ribonuclease activity of ColE3 resides in the molecule itself, rather than being mediated by another protein (Saunders, 1978, Nature 274:113-114). ColE3 is also able to penetrate the inner and outer membranes of the target cell.

In its naturally occurring form, ColE3 is a 60kDa protein complex consisting of a 50kDa and a 10kDa protein in a 1:1 ratio, the larger subunit having the nuclease activity and the smaller subunit having inhibitory function of the 50kDa subunit. Thus, the 50kDa protein acts as a cytotoxic protein (or toxin), and the 10kDa protein acts as an anti-toxin. The 50 kDa subunit comprises at least two functional domains, an N-terminal region required for translocation across target cell membranes, and a C-terminal region with catalytic (RNAse) activity. Within the host organism, the activity of the large subunit is inhibited by the small subunit. The subunits are thought to dissociate upon entry of the toxin into the target cell as a result of interaction with the target cell's outer membrane (reviewed by Konisky, 1982, Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 36:125-144).

The toxicity of the large subunit of ColE3 has been utilized to prevent the lateral spread of cloned genes among microorganisms. Diaz *et al.* (1994, Mol. Microbiol. 13:855-861) separated the two components of ColE3 such that the small (anti-toxic) subunit was

expressed as a chromosomally integrated coding sequence and the large subunit was expressed from a plasmid. Bacteria with the chromosomally integrated small subunit are immune to plasmids that express the ColE3 large subunit, but if the plasmid were to be laterally transferred to another recipient that lacked the small subunit, that cell would be killed.

Colicin E3 (ColE3) has also been shown to have a profoundly cytotoxic effect on mammalian cells (see Smarda *et al.*, 1978, Folia Microbiol. 23:272-277), including a leukemia cell model system (see Fiska *et al.*, 1979, Experimentia 35:406-407). ColE3 activity targets the 40S subunit of the 80S mammalian ribosome (Turnowsky *et al.*, 1973, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm. 52:327-334).

2.7. BACTERIAL INFECTIONS AND CANCER

Early clinical observations reported cases in which certain cancers were reported to regress in patients with bacterial infections, See Nauts *et al.*, 1953, Acta Medica. Scandinavica 145:1-102, (Suppl. 276); and Shear, 1950, J.A.M.A. 142:383-390. Since these observations, Lee *et al.*, 1992, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89:1847-1851 (Lee *et al.*) and Jones *et al.*, 1992, Infect. Immun. 60:2475-2480 (Jones *et al.*) isolated mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium* that were able to invade HEp-2 (human epidermoid carcinoma) cells *in vitro* in significantly greater numbers than the wild-type strain. The "hyperinvasive" mutants were isolated under conditions of aerobic growth of the bacteria that normally repress the ability of wild-type strains to invade HEp-2 animal cells. However, such hyperinvasive *Salmonella typhimurium* as described by Lee *et al.* and Jones *et al.* carry the risk of pan-invasive infection and could lead to wide-spread bacterial infection in the cancer patient.

Carswell *et al.*, 1975, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 72:3666-3669, demonstrated that mice injected with bacillus Calmette-Guerin (BCG) have increased serum levels of TNF and that TNF-positive serum caused necrosis of the sarcoma Meth A and other transplanted tumors in mice. As a result of such observations, immunization of cancer patients with BCG injections is currently utilized in some cancer therapy protocols. See Sosnowski, 1994, Compr. Ther. 20:695-701; Barth and Morton, 1995, Cancer 75 (Suppl. 2):726-734; Friberg, 1993, Med. Oncol. Tumor. Pharmacother. 10:31-36 for reviews of BCG therapy.

However, TNF-α-mediated septic shock is among the primary concerns associated with bacteria, and can have toxic or lethal consequences for the host (Bone, 1992, JAMA 268:3452-3455; Dinarello *et al.*, 1993, JAMA 269:1829-1835). Further, dose-limiting, systemic toxicity of TNF-α has been the major barrier to effective clinical use. Modifications which reduce this form of an immune response would be useful because TNF-α levels would not be toxic, and a more effective concentration and/or duration of the therapeutic vector could be used.

2.8. TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA

Genetically engineered *Salmonella* have been demonstrated to be capable of tumor targeting, possess anti-tumor activity and are useful in delivering effector genes such as the herpes simplex thymidine kinase (HSV TK) to solid tumors (Pawelek *et al.*, WO 96/40238).

2.9. DECREASED INDUCTION OF TNF-α BY MODIFIED BACTERIAL LIPID A

Modifications to the lipid composition of tumor-targeted bacteria which alter the immune response as a result of decreased induction of TNFα production were suggested by Pawelek *et al.* (Pawelek *et al.*, WO 96/40238). Pawelek *et al.* provided methods for isolation of genes from *Rhodobacter* responsible for monophosphoryl lipid A (MLA) production. MLA acts as an antagonist to septic shock. Pawelek *et al.* also suggested the use of genetic modifications in the lipid A biosynthetic pathway, including the mutation *firA*, which codes for the third enzyme UDP-3-O (R-30 hydroxylmyristoyl)-glucosamine –acyltransferase in lipid A biosynthesis (Kelley *et al.*, 1993, J. Biol. Chem. 268:19866-19874). Pawelek *et al.* showed that mutations in the *firA* gene induce lower levels of TNFα.

In *Escherichia coli*, the gene *msbB* (*mlt*) which is responsible for the terminal myristalization of lipid A has been identified (Engel, *et al.*, 1992, J. Bacteriol. 174:6394-6403; Karow and Georgopoulos 1992, J. Bacteriol. 174:702-710; Somerville *et al.*, 1996, J. Clin. Invest. 97:359-365). Genetic disruption of this gene results in a stable non-conditional mutation which lowers TNFα induction (Somerville *et al.*, 1996, J. Clin. Invest. 97:359-365; Somerville, WO 97/25061). These references, however, do not suggest that disruption of the *msbB* gene in tumor-targeted *Salmonella* vectors would result in bacteria which are less virulent and more sensitive to chelating agents.

The problems associated with the use of bacteria as gene delivery vectors center on the general ability of bacteria to directly kill normal mammalian cells as well as their ability to overstimulate the immune system via TNFα which can have toxic consequences for the host (Bone, 1992, JAMA 268:3452-3455; and Dinarello *et al.*, 1993, JAMA 269:1829-1835). In addition to these factors, resistance to antibiotics can severely complicate coping with the presence of bacteria within the human body (Tschape, 1996, D T W Dtsch Tierarztl Wochenschr 1996 103:273-7; Ramos *et al.*, 1996, Enferm Infec. Microbiol. Clin. 14: 345-51).

Hone and Powell, WO97/18837 ("Hone and Powell"), disclose methods to produce gram-negative bacteria having non-pyrogenic Lipid A or LPS.

Maskell, WO98/33923, describes a mutant strain of *Salmonella* having a mutation in the *msbB* gene which induces TNFα at a lower level as compared to a wild type strain.

Bermudes *et al.*, WO 99/13053, teach compositions and methods for the genetic disruption of the *msbB* gene in *Salmonella*, which results in *Salmonella* possessing a lesser ability to elicit TNFα and reduced virulence compared to the wild type. In certain embodiments, some such mutant *Salmonella* have increased sensitivity to chelating agents as compared to wild type *Salmonella*. See also, Low *et al.*, 1999, Nature Biotech. 17:37-47.

Citation or identification of any reference in Section 2, or any section of this application shall not be construed as an admission that such reference is available as prior art to the present invention.

3. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides methods for delivering one or more primary effector molecule(s) to a solid tumor. In an embodiment, the methods provide for delivery of a high level of one or more primary effector molecules. In particular, the invention provides methods by which a primary effector molecule(s), which may be toxic or induce unwanted effects (*e.g.*, unwanted immunological effects) when delivered systemically to a host, can be delivered locally to tumor by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella* with reduced toxicity to the host. The present invention encompasses the preparation and the use of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as, *e.g.*, *Salmonella,* as a vector for the delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s), to an appropriate site of action, *e.g.*, the site of a solid tumor. Specifically, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of the invention are facultative aerobes or facultative anaerobes which are engineered to encode one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s).

The present invention provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express nucleic acid molecules encoding primary effector molecules at the site of a solid tumor. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a nucleic acid molecule encoding a primary effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules. In accordance with this embodiment, a single bacterial strain is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules at the site of a solid tumor. In another embodiment, more than one attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strain is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules. In a mode of this embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strains are of the same species. In another mode of this embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strains are of different species (*e.g.*, *Listeria* and *Salmonella*).

The primary effector molecules of the invention are useful for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer such as a carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma, or sarcoma. As used herein, "treatment of a solid tumor" or "treat a solid tumor" encompasses inhibiting the growth of a tumor or tumor cells, reducing the volume of a tumor, killing tumor cells, or spreading of tumor cells (metastasis). In a specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention induce a local immune response at the site of the tumor that results in the inhibition of growth of a tumor or tumor cells, the killing of tumor cells, or the prevention of the spread of tumor cells to other parts of the body. Accordingly, the primary effector molecules provide a therapeutic effect for treatment of a tumor.

The primary effector molecules can be derived from any known organism, including, but not limited to, animals, plants, bacteria, fungi, and protista, or viruses. In a preferred mode of one embodiment of the invention, the primary effector molecule(s) is derived from a mammal. In a more preferred mode of this embodiment, the primary effector molecule(s) is derived from a human. The primary effector molecules of the invention include members of the TNF family, anti-angiogenic factors, cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides, tumor inhibitory enzymes, and functional fragments thereof.

In a specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are members of the TNF family or functional fragments thereof. Examples of TNF family members, include, but are not limited to, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-β (TNF-β), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α-related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), CD40 ligand (CD40L), LT-α (lymphotoxin alpha), LT-β (lymphotoxin beta), OX40L (OX40 ligand), FasL, CD27L (CD27 ligand), CD30L (CD30 ligand), 4-1BBL, APRIL (a proliferation-inducing ligand), LIGHT (a 29 kDa type II transmembrane protein produced by activated T cells), TL1 (a tumor necrosis factor-like cytokine), TNFSF16, TNFSF17, and AITR-L (ligand of the activation-inducible TNFR family member). In a preferred embodiment, a primary effector molecule of the invention is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-β (TNF-β), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α-related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), and CD40 ligand (CD40L), or a functional fragment thereof.

In another specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are anti-angiogenic factors or functional fragments thereof. Examples of anti-angiogenic factors, include, but are not limited to, endostatin, angiostatin, apomigren, anti-angiogenic antithrombin III, the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin, a uPA receptor antagonist, the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin, the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic 24 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-

angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of thrombospondin I, the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, RGD and NGR containing peptides, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen and EGF, and peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$ and the VEGF receptor. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is a functional fragment of endostatin, apomigren or thrombospondin I.

In another specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides, or functional fragments thereof. Examples of cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides include, but are not limited to, members of the bacteriocin family, verotoxin, cytotoxic necrotic factor 1 (CNF1), cytotoxic necrotic factor 2 (CNF2), *Pasteurella multiocida* toxin (PMT), *Pseudomonas* endotoxin, hemolysin, CAAX tetrapeptides which are potent competitive inhibitors of farnesyltransferase, cyclin inhibitors, Raf kinase inhibitors, CDC kinase inhibitors, caspases, p53, p16, and p21. In a preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule is a member of the bacteroicin family, with the proviso that said bacteriocin family member is not a bacteriocin release protein (BRP). Examples of bacteriocin family members, include, but are not limited to, ColE1, ColE1a, ColE1b ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, ColE9, Colicins A, Colicin K, Colicin L, Colicin M, cloacin DF13, pesticin A1122, staphylococcin 1580, butyricin 7423, pyocin R1 or AP41, megacin A-216, and vibriocin. In a specific embodiment, the primary effector molecule is colicin E3.

In another specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are tumor inhibitory enzymes or functional fragments thereof. Examples of tumor inhibitory enzymes include, but are not limited to, methionase, asparaginase, lipase, phospholipase, protease, ribonuclease (excluding colE3), DNAase, and glycosidase. In a preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule is methionase.

The present invention also provides methods for local, combinatorial delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) and one or more secondary effector molecule(s) to solid tumors by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a nucleic acid molecule encoding a primary effector molecule and a secondary effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules. In accordance with this embodiment, a single bacterial strain is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules at the site of a solid tumor. In another embodiment, more than one attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strain is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules at the site of a

solid tumor. In a mode of this embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strains are of the same species. In another mode of this embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strains are of different species (*e.g.*, *Listeria* and *Salmonella*).

The secondary effector molecule(s) of the invention provide additional anti-tumor therapeutic activity, enhance release of the primary effector molecule(s) from the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, and/or enhance internalization at the site of action, *e.g.*, at the site of a solid tumor. The secondary effector molecule(s) of the invention comprise a molecule (such as an anti-tumor protein, including but not limited to a cytotoxins, an enzyme abd a bacteriocin; a pro-drug converting enzyme; an antisense molecule; a ribozyme; an antigen; *etc.*) which is delivered in addition to the primary effector molecule(s) by the methods of the invention to treat a solid tumor cancer such as a carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma, or sarcoma.

The secondary effector molecules can be derived from any known organism, including, but not limited to, animals, plants, bacteria, fungi, and protista, or viruses. In certain embodiments, the secondary effector molecule is derived from a bacteria or virus. In certain preferred embodiments of the invention, the secondary effector molecule(s) is derived from a bacterium (*e.g.* BRP). In other preferred embodiments of the invention, the secondary effector molecule(s) is derived from a virus (*e.g.*, TAT). In yet other preferred embodiments of the invention, the secondary effector molecule(s) is derived from a mammal. In certain preferred embodiments, the secondary effector molecule(s) is derived from a human.

The invention provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising effector molecule(s) which are encoded by a plasmid or transfectable nucleic acid. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*. When more than one effector molecule (*e.g.*, primary or secondary) is expressed in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, the effector molecules may be encoded by the same plasmid or nucleic acid, or by more than one plasmid or nucleic acid. The invention also provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising effector molecule(s) which are encoded by a nucleic acid which is integrated into the bacterial genome. Integrated effector molecule(s) may be endogenous to an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, or may be introduced into the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria (*e.g.*, by introduction of a nucleic acid which encodes the effector molecule, such as a plasmid, transfectable nucleic acid, transposon, *etc.*) such that the nucleic acid encoding the effector molecule becomes integrated into the genome of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. The invention provides a nucleic acid molecule encoding an effector molecule which nucleic acid is operably linked to an appropriate promoter. A promoter operably linked to a nucleic acid encoding an effector molecule may be homologous (*i.e.*, native) or heterologous (*i.e.*, not native to the nucleic acid encoding the effector molecule).

Examples of suitable promoters include but are not limited to the Tet promoter, trc, pepT, lac, sulA, pol II (dinA), ruv, recA, uvrA, uvrB, uvrD, umuDC, lexA, cea, caa, recN and pagC.

The present invention also provides methods for local delivery of one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal sequence and an effector molecule by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. In a preferred embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising an Omp-like protein, or portion thereof (*e.g.,* signal sequence, leader sequence, periplasmic region, transmembrane domain, multiple transmembrane domains, or combinations thereof; see *infra*, Section 3.1 for definition of "Omp-like protein") and an effector molecule. Without intending to be limited as to mechanism, the present inventors believe that the Omp-like protein acts as an anchor or tether for the effector molecule to the outer membrane, or serves to localize the effector molecule to the bacterial outer membrane. In certain embodiments, the effector molecule has enhanced delivery to the outer membrane of the bacteria. In one embodiment, the fusion of an effector molecule to an Omp-like protein is used to enhance localization of an effector molecule to the periplasm. In certain other embodiments, the fusion of an effector molecule to an Omp-like protein is used to enhance release of the effector molecule. Examples of Omp-like proteins include, but are not limited to, at least a portion of each of the following: OmpA, OmpB, OmpC, OmpD, OmpE, OmpF, OmpT, a porin-like protein, PhoA, PhoE, lamB, β-lactamase, an enterotoxin, protein A, endoglucanase, peptidoglycan-associated lipoprotein (PAL), FepA, FhuA, NmpA, NmpB, NmpC, and a major outer membrane lipoprotein (such as LPP). In other embodiments of the invention, a fusion protein of the invention comprises a proteolytic cleavage site. The proteolytic cleavage site may be endogenous to the effector molecule or endogenous to the Omp-like protein, or the proteolytic cleavage site may be constructed into the fusion protein.

The present invention also provides methods for local delivery of one or more fusion proteins comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule to a solid tumor by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. Ferry peptides used in fusion proteins have been shown to facilitate the delivery of a polypeptide or peptide of interest to virtually any cell within diffusion limits of its production or introduction (see., *e.g.*, Bayley, 1999, Nature Biotechnology 17:1066-1067; Fernandez *et al.*, 1998, Nature Biotechnology 16:418-420; and Derossi *et al.*, 1998, Trends Cell Biol. 8:84-87). Accordingly, engineering attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria to express fusion proteins comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule enhances the ability of an effector molecule to be internalized by tumor cells. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a nucleic acid molecule encoding a fusion protein comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are

engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In accordance with these embodiments, the effector molecule may be a primary or secondary effector molecule. Examples of ferry peptides include, but are not limited to, peptides derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetratin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), and herpes simplex virus VP22.

The present invention also provides methods for local delivery of one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal peptide, ferry peptide and an effector molecule to a solid tumor by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal sequence, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In accordance with this embodiment, the effector molecule may be a primary or secondary effector molecule.

The present invention also provides methods for local delivery of one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal peptide, a protolytic cleavage site, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule to a solid tumor by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal sequence, a protolytic cleavage site, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In accordance with this embodiment, the effector molecule may be a primary or secondary effector molecule.

In certain embodiments, a single bacterial strain is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding a fusion protein of the invention at the site of a solid tumor. In certain other embodiments, more than one attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strain is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention at the site of a solid tumor. In modes of these embodiments, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strains are of the same species. In another modes of these embodiments, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strains are of different species (*e.g.*, *Listeria* and *Salmonella*).

The present invention also provides methods for local delivery of one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules of the invention to the site of a solid tumor by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. Preferably, the expression of both the fusion protein(s) and effector molecule(s) at the site of the solid tumor by an attenuated tumor-targeting bacteria improves the level of tumor or tumor cell growth inhibited compared to when either fusion protein(s) alone or the effector molecule(s) alone is expressed.

The present invention also provides expression of a primary effector molecule and optionally, a secondary effector molecule in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, which bacteria has an enhanced release system. In a preferred embodiment of

the invention, the enhanced release is associated with expression of a release factor by the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. In one embodiment, the release allows enhanced release of effector molecules from the cytoplasmic or periplasmic space. A release factor may be endogenous to the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria or it may exogenous (*i.e.*, encoded by a nucleic acid molecule that is not native to the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria). A release factor may be encoded by a nucleic acid comprising a plasmid, or by a nucleic acid which is integrated into the genome of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. A release factor may be encoded by the same nucleic acid or plasmid that encodes a primary effector molecule, or by a separate nucleic acid or plasmid. A release factor may be encoded by the same nucleic acid or plasmid that encodes a secondary effector molecule, or by a separate nucleic acid or plasmid. In a preferred embodiment, the release factor is a Bacteriocin Release Protein (BRP). In a specific embodiment, the BRP is that of the cloacin DF13 plasmid, one of colicin E1-E9 plasmids, or the colicin A, N or D plasmids. In a preferred embodiment, the BRP is of cloacin DF13 (pCloDF13 BRP). In another embodiment of the invention, the enhanced release system comprises overexpression of a porin protein.

The present invention also provides expression of a fusion protein of the invention in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, which bacteria has an enhanced release system. In a specific embodiment, the release factor is expressed in a cell which also expresses a fusion protein comprising a primary effector molecule fused to an Omp-like protein. In this embodiment, the co-expression of the release factor allows for enhanced release of the fusion protein from the periplasmic space.

In one embodiment, the present invention provides methods of delivering high levels of effector molecules or fusion proteins using modified, attenuated tumor-targeted strains of bacteria, which selectively accumulate within tumors while expressing the effector molecules or fusion proteins. In a specific mode, a modified, attenuated tumor-targeted strain of bacteria selectively amplifies effector molecules within tumors. While the teachings of the following sections are discussed, for simplicity, with reference specifically to *Salmonella*, the compositions and methods of the invention are in no way meant to be restricted to *Salmonella* but encompass any other bacteria to which the teachings apply. Specifically, the invention provides an attenuated tumor-targeted bacterium which is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe. Examples of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria include, but are not limited to, *Escherichia coli,* including enteroinvasive *Escherichia coli, Salmonella spp., Shigella spp., Yersinia enterocohtica, Listeria monocytogenies, Mycoplasma hominis,* and *Streptococcus spp.*

The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector

molecules. The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules. The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention. Further, the present invention provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules (*i.e.*, primary or/and secondary molecules). In a preferred embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are useful for the treatment of solid tumors. Solid tumors include, but are not limited to, sarcomas, carcinomas, lymphomas, and other solid tumor cancers, including, but not limited to germ line tumors, tumors of the central nervous system, breast cancer, prostate cancer, cervical cancer, uterine cancer, lung cancer, ovarian cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer, astrocytoma, glioma, pancreatic cancer, stomach cancer, liver cancer, colon cancer, melanoma, renal cancer, bladder cancer, and mesothelioma.

The present invention provides methods for delivering a primary effector molecule for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal, preferably a mammal and most preferably a human, in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules. The present invention also provides methods for delivering a primary effector molecule for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal, preferably a mammal and most preferably a human, in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules. The present invention also provides methods for delivering a primary effector molecule for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal, preferably a mammal and most preferably a human, in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention. Further, the present invention provides methods for delivering a primary effector molecule for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal, preferably a mammal and most preferably a human, in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition

comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules (*i.e.*, primary or/and secondary molecules). In a preferred embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*. In a specific mode, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprises an enhanced release system.

In certain embodiments, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins can be used in conjunction with other known cancer therapies. For example, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins can be used in conjunction with a chemotherapeutic agent. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, cisplatin, ifosfamide, paclitaxol, taxanes, topoisomerase I inhibitors (*e.g.,* CPT-11, topotecan, 9-AC, and GG-211), gemcitabine, vinorelbine, oxaliplatin, 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), leucovorin, vinorelbine, temodal, taxol, cytochalasin B, gramicidin D, emetine, mitomycin, etoposide, tenoposide, vincristine, vinblastine, colchicin, doxorubicin, daunorubicin, dihydroxy anthracin dione, mitoxantrone, mithramycin, actinomycin D, 1-dehydrotestosterone, melphalan, glucocorticoids, procaine, tetracaine, lidocaine, propranolol, and puromycin homologs, and cytoxan. Alternatively, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins can be used in conjunction with radiation therapy.

The present invention includes the sequential or concomitant administration of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins. The invention encompasses combinations of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins that are additive or synergistic.

The invention also encompasses combinations of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins that have different sites of action. Such a combination provides an improved therapy based on the dual action of these therapeutics whether the combination is synergistic or additive. Thus, the novel combinational therapy of the present invention yields improved efficacy over either agent used as a single-agent therapy.

3.1. DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

As used herein, *Salmonella* encompasses all *Salmonella* species, including: *Salmonella typhi*, *Salmonella choleraesuis*, and *Salmonella enteritidis*. Serotypes of

Salmonella are also encompassed herein, for example, *typhimurium*, a subgroup of *Salmonella enteritidis*, commonly referred to as *Salmonella typhimurium*.

Analog: As used herein, the term "analog" refers to a polypeptide that possesses a similar or identical function as a primary or secondary effector molecule but does not necessarily comprise a similar or identical amino acid sequence of a primary or secondary effector molecule, or possess a similar or identical structure of a primary or secondary effector molecule. A polypeptide that has a similar amino acid sequence refers to a polypeptide that satisfies at least one of the following: (a) a polypeptide having an amino acid sequence that is at least 30%, at least 35%, at least 40%, at least 45%, at least 50%, at least 55%, at least 60%, at least 65%, at least 70%, at least 75%, at least 80%, at least 85%, at least 90%, at least 95% or at least 99% identical to the amino acid sequence of a primary or secondary effector molecule described herein; (b) a polypeptide encoded by a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes under stringent conditions to a nucleotide sequence encoding a primary or secondary effector molecule described herein of at least 5 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 10 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 15 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 20 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 25 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 40 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 50 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 60 contiguous amino residues, at least 70 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 80 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 90 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 100 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 125 contiguous amino acid residues, or at least 150 contiguous amino acid residues; and (c) a polypeptide encoded by a nucleotide sequence that is at least 30%, at least 35%, at least 40%, at least 45%, at least 50%, at least 55%, at least 60%, at least 65%, at least 70%, at least 75%, at least 80%, at least 85%, at least 90%, at least 95% or at least 99% identical to the nucleotide sequence encoding a primary or secondary effector molecule described herein. A polypeptide with similar structure to a primary or secondary effector molecule described herein refers to a polypeptide that has a similar secondary, tertiary or quaternary structure of primary or secondary effector molecule described herein. The structure of a polypeptide can be determined by methods known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to, peptide sequencing, X-ray crystallography, nuclear magnetic resonance, circular dichroism, and crystallographic electron microscopy.

Anti-angiogenic factor: An anti-angiogenic factor is any proteinaceous molecule which has anti-angiogenic activity, or a nucleic acid encoding such a proteinaceous molecule. In a preferred embodiment, the anti-angiogenic factor is a peptide fragment or cleavage fragment of a larger protein.

Attenuation: Attenuation is a modification so that a microorganism or vector is less pathogenic. The end result of attenuation is that the risk of toxicity as well as other side-effects is decreased, when the microorganism or vector is administered to the patient.

Bacteriocin: A bacteriocin is a bacterial proteinaceous toxin with selective activity, in that the bacterial host is immune to the toxin. Bacteriocins may be encoded by the bacterial host genome or by a plasmid, may be toxic to a broad or narrow range of other bacteria, and may have a simple structure comprising one or two subunits or may be a multi-subunit structure. In addition, a host expressing a bacteriocin has immunity against the bacteriocin.

Chelating agent sensitivity: Chelating agent sensitivity is defined as the effective concentration at which bacteria proliferation is affected, or the concentration at which the viability of bacteria, as determined by recoverable colony forming units (c.f.u.), is reduced.

Derivative: As used herein, the term "derivative" in the context of a "derivative of a polypeptide" refers to a polypeptide that comprises an amino acid sequence of a polypeptide, such as a primary or secondary effector molecule, which has been altered by the introduction of amino acid residue substitutions, deletions or additions, or by the covalent attachment of any type of molecule to the polypeptide. The term "derivative" as used herein in the context of a "derivative of a primary or a secondary effector molecule" refers to a primary or secondary effector molecule which has been so modified, *e.g.*, by the covalent attachment of any type of molecule to the primary or secondary molecule. For example, but not by way of limitation, a primary or secondary effector molecule may be modified, *e.g.*, by proteolytic cleavage, linkage to a cellular ligand or other protein, etc. A derivative of a primary or secondary effector molecule may be modified by chemical modifications using techniques known to those of skill in the art (*e.g.*, by acylation, phosphorylation, carboxylation, glycosylation, selenium modification and sulfation). Further, a derivative of a primary or secondary effector molecule may contain one or more non-classical amino acids. A polypeptide derivative possesses a similar or identical function as a primary or secondary effector molecule described herein. The term "derivative" in the context of a "derivative of an msbB$^-$ attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* mutant" refers to a modified msbB$^-$ *Salmonella* mutant as defined in International Publication No. WO 99/13053 at page 17, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Fragment: As used herein, the term "fragment" refers to a peptide or polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence of at least 2 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 5 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 10 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 15 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 20 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 25 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 40 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 50 contiguous amino acid residues, at least 60 contiguous amino residues, at least 70 contiguous amino acid residues, at least contiguous 80 amino acid residues, at least contiguous 90 amino acid residues, at least contiguous 100 amino acid residues, at least contiguous 125 amino acid residues, at least 150 contiguous amino acid residues, at least

contiguous 175 amino acid residues, at least contiguous 200 amino acid residues, or at least contiguous 250 amino acid residues of the amino acid sequence of a primary or secondary effector molecule.

Functional fragment: As used herein, the term "functional fragment" refers to a fragment of a primary or secondary effector molecule that retains at least one function of the primary or secondary effector molecule (*e.g.*, enzymatic activity, anti-angiogenic activity, or anti-tumor activity of the effector molecule).

Fusion protein: As used herein, the term "fusion protein" refers to a polypeptide that comprises an amino acid sequence of primary or secondary effector molecule, or functional fragment or derivative thereof, and an amino acid sequence of a heterologous polypeptide (*e.g.*, a non-primary or non-secondary effector molecule).

Omp-like protein: As used herein, an Omp-like protein includes any bacterial outer membrane protein, or portion thereof (*e.g.*, signal sequence, leader sequence, periplasmic region, transmembrane domain, multiple transmembrane domains, or combinations thereof). In specific embodiments, the Omp-like protein is at least a portion of OmpA, OmpB, OmpC, OmpD, OmpE, OmpF, OmpT, a porin-like protein, PhoA, PhoE, lamB, β-lactamase, an enterotoxin, protein A, endoglucanase, peptidoglycan-associated lipoprotein (PAL), FepA, FhuA, NmpA, NmpB, NmpC, or a major outer membrane lipoprotein (such as LPP), etc.

Purified: As used herein, "purified" attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strain is substantially free of contaminating proteins or amino acids (*e.g.*, debris from dead bacteria), or media. An attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial strain that is substantially free of contaminating proteins or amino acids includes preparations of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria having less than about 30%, 20%, 10%, or 5% (by dry weight) of contaminating protein or amino acid.

Release factor: As used herein, a release factor includes any protein, or functional portion thereof which enhances release of bacterial components. In one embodiment a release factor is a bacteriocin release protein. Release factors include, but are not limited to, the bacteriocin release protein (BRP) encoded by the cloacin D13 plasmid, the BRPs encoded by the colicin E1-E9 plasmids, or BRPs encoded by the colicin A, N or D plasmids.

Septic shock: Septic shock is a state of internal organ failure due to a complex cytokine cascade, initiated by TNF-α. The relative ability of a microorganism or vector to elicit TNF-α is used as one measure to indicate its relative ability to induce septic shock.

Tumor-targeted: Tumor-targeted is defined as the ability to preferentially localize to a cancerous target cell or tissue relative to a non-cancerous counterpart cell or tissue and replicate. Thus, a tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella* preferentially attaches to, infects and/or remains viable in the cancerous target cell or the tumor environment.

Virulence: Virulence is a relative term describing the general ability to cause disease, including the ability to kill normal cells or the ability to elicit septic shock (see specific definition below).

As used herein, the strain designations VNP20009 (International Publication No. WO 99/13053), YS1646 and 41.2.9 are used interchangeably and each refer to the strain deposited with the American Type Culture Collection and assigned Accession No. 202165. As used herein, the strain designations YS1456 and 8.7 are used interchangeably and each refer to the strain deposited with the American Type Culture Collection and assigned Accession No. 202164.

The present invention may be understood more fully by reference to the following detailed description, illustrative examples of specific embodiments and the appended figures.

4. BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

FIG. 1. Coding sequence for the mature human TNF-α. Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:3) and protein (SEQ ID NO:4) sequences are indicated.

FIG. 2. Derivation of the *Salmonella* VNP20009 *serC*-strain.

FIG. 3. TNF-α, expression from a chromosomally-integrated trc promoter driven TNF-α, gene in *Salmonella typhimurium*.

FIG. 4. Coding sequence for the synthetic OmpA signal sequence (nucleotides 1-63) fusion to the mature human TNF-α (nucleotides 67-543). Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:7) and protein (SEQ ID NO:8) sequences are indicated for the fusion construct.

FIG. 5. Periplasmic localization and processing of an OmpA/TNF-α, fusion protein in E-coli (JM109 strain).

FIG. 6. Coding sequence for the OmpA signal sequence (nucleotides 1-63) fusion to the mature human TRAIL (nucleotides 67-801). Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:9) and protein (SEQ ID NO:10) sequences are indicated for the fusion construct.

FIG. 7. Expression and processing of an OmpA TRAIL fusion protein in E-coli (JM109 strain).

FIG. 8. Coding sequence for the modified OmpA signal sequence (nucleotides 1-63) fusion to the mature (C125A) human IL-2 (nucleotides 64-462). Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:11) and protein (SEQ ID NO:12) sequences are indicated for the fusion construct.

FIG. 9. Expression and processing of mature human IL-2 fused to the phoA(8L) or ompA (8L) synthetic signal peptides.

FIG. 10. Coding sequence for the modified phoA signal sequence (nucleotides 1-63) fusion to the mature (C125A) human IL-2 (nucleotides 64-462). Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:13) and protein (SEQ ID NO:14) sequences are indicated for the fusion construct.

FIG. 11. *In vivo* anti-tumor efficacy of an attenuated strain of *Salmonella typhimurium* expressing the mature form of human TNF-α.

FIG. 12. Effect of BRP expression on anti-tumor efficacy *in vivo*. The figure shows a graphic representation of mean tumor size over time of a C57BL/6 mouse population with B16 melanoma tumors treated with (1) a PBS control; (2) VNP20009; and (3) VNP20009 harboring the pSW1 plasmid, which comprises the BRP gene.

FIG. 13. Anaerobic induction of β-gal gene expression under the control of the pepT promoter in *Salmonella*. FIG. 13A demonstrates the *in vitro* induction of β-gal expression in response to anaerobic conditions of two strains of *Salmonella*, YS1456 and VNP20009. FIG. 13B demonstrates the *in vivo* induction of β-gal in tumor v. liver cells of VNP20009 *Salmonella* expressing BRP, β-gal, or BRP and β-gal.

FIG. 14. Tetracycline induction of β-gal gene expression under the control of the Tet promoter in *Salmonella*. The dose-response indicates a linear response to Tetracycline up to a concentration of approximately 0.15 μg/ml, after which there response declines, presumably as a result of the antibiotic function of Tetracycline.

FIG. 15. Hexahistidine-endostatin (HexaHIS-endostatin) expression from the pTrc99a vector. FIG. 15A shows the expression of HexaHIS-endostatin from three independent clones transformed into *Salmonella* (VNP20009). FIG. 15B shows the expression of HexaHIS-endostatin from five independent clones transformed into *E.coli* (DH5α). Even numbered lanes indicate extracts from uninduced cultures, whereas odd numbered lanes indicate the corresponding IPTG-induced cultures.

FIG. 16. Expression of HexaHIS-endostatin from the plasmid YA3334:

HexaHIS-endostatin in the asd system (utilizing the *trc* promoter) is able to express a band of the correct size for HexaHIS-endostatin (~25kD) by Western analysis with a anti-histidine antibody (lanes 1-8 correspond to eight independent clones).

FIG. 17. Efficacy of VNP20009 cells expressing endostatin on C38 murine colon carcinoma. The figure shows a graphic representation of mean tumor size over time of a mouse population with established C38 tumors treated with (1) a PBS control; (2) *asd*$^-$ VNP20009 carrying an empty YA3334 vector; (3) *asd*$^-$VNP20009 which expresses hexahistidine-endostatin; (4) and VNP20009 which expresses hexahistidine-endostatin and BRP.

FIG. 18. Efficacy of VNP20009 cells expressing endostatin on DLD1 human colon carcinoma. The figure shows a graphic representation of mean tumor size over time of a nude mouse population with established DLD1 tumors treated with (1) a PBS control; (2) *asd*$^-$ VNP20009 carrying an empty YA3334 vector; and (3) VNP20009 which expresses hexahistidine-endostatin and BRP.

FIG. 19. Anti-proliferative activity of lysates from attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* expressing human endostatin on endothelial cells. This figure shows the inhibition of human vein endothelial cell (HUVEC) proliferation in response to bFGF and lysates corresponding to 8 x 10^8 bacteria. As a control *Salmonella* containing the empty pTrc vector was used. Each data point is a mean of quadruplicate values from a representative experiment. Samples were normalized by the number of bacteria.

FIG. 20. Anti-proliferative activity of lysates from attenuated tumor-targeted Salmonella expressing platelet factor-4 peptide (amino acids 47-70 of platelet factor-4) and thrombospondin peptide(13.40) on endothelial cells. This figure shows the inhibition of human vein endothelial cell (HUVEC) proliferation in response to bFGF and lysates corresponding to 3.2 x 10^8 bacteria. As a control *Salmonella* containing the empty pTrc vector was used. Each data point is a mean of quadruplicate values from a representative experiment. Samples were normalized by the number of bacteria.

FIG. 21. Construction of the pE3.shuttle -1 Vector.

FIG. 22. Construction of the Col E3-CA38 Vector (GenBank Accession Number AF129270). The nucleotide sequence of the Col E3-CA38 Vector is as depicted in SEQ ID NO: 1. The Col E3-CA38 Vector contains 5 open reading frames as depicted in SEQ ID Nos: 2-5, respectively.

FIG. 23. Construction of the Col E3-CA38/BRP-1 vector.

FIG. 24. Bar Graph showing the amount of lethal units of colicin E3 produced by each strain.

FIG. 25. Halo assay for various strains exposed to ultraviolet light or x-rays.

FIG. 26. Efficacy of 41.2.9/Col E3 on C38 murine colon carcinoma.

FIG. 27. Anti-tumor activity of 41.2.9/Col/E3 on DLD1 human colon carcinoma in NU/Nu mice.

FIG. 28. Efficacy of 41.2.9/Col E3 on B16 murine melanoma.

FIG. 29. Cytotoxicity of *Salmonella* expressing cloned *E. coli* CNF1.

FIG. 30. Hela cells exposed to CNF1 (A) show enlargement and multinucleation relative to normal Hela cells (B).

FIG. 31. The *msbB* portion of the pCVD442-*msbB* vector in the 3' to 5' orientation (as viewed in th FIG. 32 map), with a deletion in the middle of *msbB* and containing internal *Not*1, *Pac*I, *Sph*I, *Sfi*I, *Swa*I and *Dra*I polylinker in its place (SEQ ID NO:61). See FIG. 32.

FIG. 32. Restriction map and schematic of the pCVD442-*msbB* vector for cloning DNA in the D*msbB* region and subsequent insertion on the chromosome. *msbB*del, the 5' and 3' regions of D*msbB*; *mob* RP4, the mobilization element in order for the plasmid to be transferred from one strain to another. *bla*; the beta-lactamase gene which confers sensitivity to b-lactam antibiotic such as carbenicillin and ampicillin. *sacB*, the gene which confers sensitivity to sucrose.

FIG. 33. 1) pCVD442-Tet-BRP-AB vector, 2) homologous recombination with the D*msbB* chromosomal copy in *Salmonella* YS50102, 3) chromosomal integration in *Salmonella* YS50102, and following phage transduction to strain VNP20009, 4) sucrose resolution resulting in strain 41.2.9-Tet-BRP-AB. *oriR6K*, the plasmid origin of replication; *mobRP4*, the mobilization element in order for the plasmid to be transferred from one strain to another. *amp*; the beta-lactamase gene which confers sensitivity to b-

lactam antibiotic such as carbenicillin and ampicillin. *sacB*, the gene which confers sensitivity to sucrose. Note: not drawn to scale.

FIG. 34. Percent cytotoxicity of tetBRPAB clone #26 and clone #31 compared to positive and negative controls (HSC10 and 41.2.9) following 72 hours of exposure to SKOV3 cells (Ave N=8). Expression of verotoxin was induced by tetracycline (see clones 26 and 31). Tetracycline treatment (+); and no tetracycline treatment (-). The *E. coli* strain HSC10 was used as a positive control for percent cytotoxicity.

FIG. 35. Halo formation on blood agar for attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* in the absence of tetracycline (1A) and the presence of tetracycline (1B). Halo formation for attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* engineered to constitutively express *SheA*. in the absence of tetracycline (2A) and the presence of tetracycline (2B). Halo formation for attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* engineered to express tetracycline inducible *SheA* in the absence of tetracycline (3A) and the presence of tetracycline (3B).

FIG. 36. (A) An illustration of the TAT-apoptin fusion protein without the hexahistadine tag. (B) An illustration of the TAT-apoptin fusion protein with the hexahistadine tag. (C) A) An illustration of the TAT-apoptin fusion protein with an OmpA-8L signal sequence.

FIG. 37. Coding sequence for TAT-apoptin fusion protein. Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:57) and protein (SEQ ID NO:58) sequences are indicated.

FIG. 38. Coding sequence for hexahistidine-TAT-apoptin fusion protein. Both DNA (SEQ ID NO:59) and protein (SEQ ID NO:60) sequences are indicated.

FIG. 39. Efficacy of VNP20009/cytoxan combination therapy on M27 lung carcinoma growth in C57BL/6 mice.

FIG. 40. Efficacy of VNP20009/mitomycin combination therapy on M27 lung carcinoma growth in C57BL/6 mice.

FIG. 41. Efficacy of VNP20009/cisplatin combination therapy on M27 lung carcinoma growth in C57BL/6 mice.

5. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention utilizes attenuated tumor-targeted strains of bacteria to deliver high levels of therapeutic primary effector molecule(s) to tumors. The present invention provides the advantage of bypassing potential systemic toxicity of certain primary effector molecules (*e.g.*, septic shock caused by TNF-α). The present invention provides delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s) to a solid tumor. More particularly, the invention encompasses the preparation and the use of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as, *e.g.*, *Salmonella,* as a vector for the delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s), to an appropriate site of action, *e.g.*, the site of a solid tumor. Specifically, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of the invention are facultative aerobes or facultative anaerobes, which are engineered to encode one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s).

The attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial-based delivery system presently described provides local delivery of one or more effector molecule(s) to the site of solid tumors. The invention provides safe and effective methods by which a primary effector molecule(s), which may be toxic or induce an unwanted side effect (*e.g.*, an unwanted immunological effect) when delivered systemically to a host, can be delivered locally to tumors by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella* with reduced toxicity to the host. The invention also provides combinatorial delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s) which are delivered by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella.* The invention also provides combinatorial delivery of different attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria carrying one or more different primary effector molecule(s) and/or optionally, one or more different secondary effector molecule(s).

The present invention also provides methods for local delivery of one or more fusion proteins comprising an effector molecule by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express said fusion proteins at the site of the solid tumor(s). In one embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a fusion protein comprising a signal peptide and an effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a fusion protein comprising a signal peptide, a proteolytic cleavage site, and an effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a fusion protein comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a fusion protein comprising a signal peptide, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In yet another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted

bacteria are engineered to express a fusion protein comprising a signal peptide, a proteolytic cleavage site, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. Attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules of the invention.

The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules. The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules. Further, the present invention provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins and one or more effector molecules.

The present invention provides methods of treating solid tumor cancers in an animal, said methods comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules. The present invention also provides methods of treating solid tumor cancers in an animal, said methods comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules. Further, the present invention provides methods of treating solid tumor cancers in an animal, said methods comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to contain one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins and one or more effector molecules. Preferably, the animal is a mammal (*e.g.*, a dog, a cat, a horse, a cow, a monkey, or a pig) and more preferably the animal is a human. Examples of solid tumor cancers include, but are not limited to, sarcomas, carcinomas, lymphomas, and other solid tumor cancers, including but not limited to, breast cancer, prostate cancer, cervical cancer, uterine cancer, lung cancer, ovarian cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer, astrocytoma, glioma, pancreatic cancer, stomach cancer, liver cancer, colon cancer, central nervous system cancer, germ cell line cancer, melanoma, renal cancer, bladder cancer, and mesothelioma.

Although not intending to be limited to any one mechanism, the inventors believe that the present invention results in the targeted expression of the effector molecule(s) at the site of a tumor by delivery of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial vector containing the effector molecule(s).

For reasons of clarity, the detailed description is divided into the following subsections: Bacterial Vectors; Primary Effector Molecules for Tumor Therapy; Secondary Effector Molecules for Co-expression With Primary Effector Molecules; Derivatives and Analogs; Fusion Proteins; Expression Vehicles; and Methods and Compositions for Delivery.

5.1. BACTERIAL VECTORS

Any attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria may be used in the methods of the invention. More specifically, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria used in the methods of the invention are facultative aerobes or facultative anaerobes. Examples of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria that are facultative aerobes or facultative anaerobes which may be used in the methods of the invention include, but are not limited to, *Escherichia coli* including enteroinvasive *Escherichia coli, Salmonella spp., Shigella spp., Yersinia enterocohtica, Listeria monocytogenies, Mycoplasma hominis,* and *Streptococcus spp.*.

Factors contributing to attenuation and tumor-targeting are described herein and may be used to construct or select an appropriate bacterial strain for use in the methods of the invention. For example, methods to select and isolate tumor-targeted bacteria are described in Section 6.1, and methods to attenuate bacteria are described in Section 6.2 of International publication WO96/40238, which are incorporated herein by reference. Examples of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are also described in International Application WO99/13053, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. In certain embodiments of the invention, a bacteria may be modified by methods known in the art to be attenuated or highly attenuated.

The present invention provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria as a vector for the delivery of one or more primary effector molecules (*e.g.*, a TNF family member, a cytotoxic peptide or polypeptide, a tumor inhibitory enzyme, or an anti-angiogenic factor) alone or in combination with a one or more secondary effector molecule(s). The present invention also provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria as a vector for the delivery of one or more fusion proteins of the invention alone or in combination with one or more effector molecules. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria which is engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecule encoding effector molecules and/or fusion proteins is *Salmonella*.

While the teachings of the following section refers specifically to *Salmonella*, the compositions and methods of the invention are in no way meant to be restricted to *Salmonella* but encompass any other bacterium to which the teachings apply. Suitable bacterial species include, but are not limited to, *Escherichia coli* including enteroinvasive *Escherichia coli, Salmonella spp., Shigella spp., Yersinia enterocohtica, Listeria*

monocytogenies, Mycoplasma hominis, Streptococcus spp., wherein the bacterium is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

5.1.1 *SALMONELLA* VECTORS

Any attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria can be modified using the teaching of the invention to encode one or more primary effector molecules and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecules to produce a novel attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria useful for the delivery of one or more effector molecules of the invention to a solid tumor. Further, any attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria can be modified using the teaching of the invention to encode one or more fusion proteins of the invention and optionally, one or more effector molecules to produce a novel attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria useful for the delivery of fusion proteins and effector molecules of the invention to a solid tumor.

Bacteria such as *Salmonella* is a causative agent of disease in humans and animals. One such disease that can be caused by *Salmonella* is sepsis, which is a serious problem because of the high mortality rate associated with the onset of septic shock (Bone, 1993, Clinical Microbiol. Revs. 6:57-68). Therefore, to allow the safe use of *Salmonella* vectors in the present invention, the bacterial vectors such as *Salmonella* are attenuated in their virulence for causing disease. In the present application, attenuation, in addition to its traditional definition in which a microorganism vector is modified so that the microorganism vector is less pathogenic, is intended to include also the modification of a microorganism vector so that a lower titer of that derived microorganism vector can be administered to a patient and still achieve comparable results as if one had administered a higher titer of the parental microorganism vector. The end result serves to reduce the risk of toxic shock or other side effects due to administration of the vector to the patient. Such attenuated bacteria are isolated by means of a number of techniques. For example, attenuation can be achieved by the deletion or disruption of DNA sequences which encode for virulence factors that insure survival of the bacteria in the host cell, especially macrophages and neutrophils. Such deletion or disruption techniques are well known in the art and include, for example, homologous recombination, chemical mutagenesis, radiation mutagenesis, or transposon mutagenesis. Those virulence factors that are associated with survival in macrophages are usually specifically expressed within the macrophages in response to stress signals, for example, acidification, or in response to host cell defensive mechanisms such macropinocytosis (Fields *et al.*, 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 83:5189-5193). Table 4 of International Publication WO 96/40238 is an illustrative list of *Salmonella* virulence factors whose deletion results in attenuation.

Yet another method for the attenuation of the bacterial vectors, such as *Salmonella*, is to modify substituents of the bacteria which are responsible for the toxicity of that bacteria. For example, lipopolysaccharide (LPS) or endotoxin is primarily responsible for

the pathological effects of bacterial sepsis. The component of LPS which results in this response is lipid A ("LA"). Elimination or mitigation of the toxic effects of LA results in an attenuated bacteria since 1) the risk of septic shock in the patient is reduced and 2) higher levels of the bacterial vector can be tolerated.

Altering the LA content of bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, can be achieved by the introduction of mutations in the LPS biosynthetic pathway. Several enzymatic steps in LPS biosynthesis and the genetic loci controlling them in *Salmonella* have been identified (Raetz, 1993, J. Bacteriol. 175:5745-5753 and references therein), as well as corresponding mutants. One such illustrative mutant is *firA*, a mutation within the gene that encodes the enzyme UDP-3-O(R-30 hydroxymyristoyl)-glycocyamine N-acyltransferase, which regulates the third step in endotoxin biosynthesis (Kelley *et al.*, 1993, J. Biol. Chem. 268:19866-19874). Bacterial strains bearing this type of mutation produce a lipid A that differs from wild-type lipid A in that it contains a seventh fatty acid, a hexadecanoic acid (Roy and Coleman, 1994, J. Bacteriol. 176:1639-1646). Roy and Coleman demonstrated that in addition to blocking the third step in endotoxin biosynthesis, the *firA*$^-$ mutation also decreases enzymatic activity of lipid A 4' kinase that regulates the sixth step of lipid A biosynthesis.

In addition to being attenuated, the bacterial vectors of the invention are tumor-targeted, *i.e.* the bacteria preferentially attaches to, infects, and/or remains viable in a tumor or tumor cell versus a normal tissue, non-tumor or non-tumor cell. Suitable methods for obtaining attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are described in Section 6.1 (pages 25-32; tumor-targeting) and Section 6.2.2 (pages 43-51;attenuation) of International Publication WO 96/40238, which are incorporated herein by reference. As the resulting vectors are highly specific and super-infective, the difference between the number of infecting bacteria found at the target tumor or tumor cell as compared to the non-cancerous counterparts becomes larger and larger as the dilution of the microorganism culture is increased such that lower titers of microorganism vectors can be used with positive results. The techniques described in International Publication WO 96/40238 can also be used to produce attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* or non-*Salmonella* bacterial vectors.

An illustrative example of an attenuated tumor-targeted bacterium having an LPS pathway mutant is the *msbB*$^-$ *Salmonella* mutant described in International Publication WO99/13053, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety; see especially Section 6.1.2 which describes the characteristic of the *msbB- Salmonella* mutant. One characteristic of the *msbB*$^-$ *Salmonella* is decreased ability to induce a TNF-α response compared to the wild-type bacterial vector. The *msbB*$^-$ *Salmonella* induce TNF-α expression at levels of about 5 percent to about 40 percent compared to the levels induced by wild-type *Salmonella*.

The TNF-α response induced by whole bacteria or isolated or purified LPS can be assessed *in vitro* or *in vivo* using commercially available assay systems such as by enzyme linked immunoassay (ELISA). Comparison of TNF-α production on a per colony forming unit ("c.f.u.") or on a μg/kg basis, is used to determine relative activity. Lower TNF-α levels on a per unit basis indicate decreased induction of TNF-α production. In a preferred embodiment, the *msbB*⁻ *Salmonella* vector is modified to contain one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s) of the invention.

The present invention also encompasses the use of derivatives of *msbB*⁻ attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* mutants. Derivatives of *msbB*⁻ attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* mutants can be modified using the teaching of the invention to encode one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s) to produce a novel attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria useful for the delivery of one or more effector molecule(s) of the invention to a solid tumor.

The stability of the attenuated phenotype is important such that the strain does not revert to a more virulent phenotype during the course of treatment of a patient. Such stability can be obtained, for example, by providing that the virulence gene is disrupted by deletion or other non-reverting mutations on the chromosomal level rather than epistatically.

Another method of insuring the attenuated phenotype is to engineer the bacteria such that it is attenuated in more than one manner, *e.g.*, a mutation in the pathway for lipid A production, such as the *msbB*⁻ mutation (International Publication WO 99/13053) and one or more mutations to auxotrophy for one or more nutrients or metabolites, such as uracil biosynthesis, purine biosynthesis, and arginine biosynthesis as described by Bochner, 1980, J. Bacteriol. 143:926-933. In a preferred embodiment, the tumor-targeted *msbB*⁻ *Salmonella* encoding or expressing at least one primary effector molecule is also auxotrophic for purine. In certain embodiments, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria encoding or expressing at least one primary effector molecule are attenuated by the presence of a mutation in *AroA, msbB, PurI* or *SerC*. In other embodiments, the attenuated tumor targeted bacteria encoding at least one primary effector molecule are attenuated by the presence of a deletion in *AroA, msbB, PurI* or *SerC*.

Accordingly, any attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria may be used in the methods of the invention to express and deliver one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s) to a solid tumor cancer. In preferred embodiments, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are constructed to express one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s). Further, any attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria may be used in the methods of the invention to express and deliver one or more fusion proteins and optionally, one or

more effector molecules to a solid tumor cancer. In preferred embodiments, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are constructed to express one or more fusion proteins and optionally, one or more effector molecules.

5.2. PRIMARY EFFECTOR MOLECULES FOR TUMOR THERAPY

The invention provides for delivery of primary (and optionally secondary) effector molecule(s) by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*. The effector molecules of the invention are proteinaceous molecules, (*e.g.*, protein (including but not limited to peptide, polypeptide, protein, post-translationally modified protein, etc.). The invention further provides nucleic acid molecules which encode the primary effector molecules of the invention.

The primary effector molecules can be derived from any known organism, including, but not limited to, animals, plants, bacteria, fungi, and protista, or viruses. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the primary effector molecule(s) is derived from a mammal. In a more preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule(s) is derived from a human. The primary effector molecules of the invention comprise members of the TNF family, anti-angiogenic factors, cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides, tumor inhibitory enzymes, and functional fragments thereof.

In a specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are members of the TNF family or functional fragments thereof. Examples of TNF family members, include, but are not limited to, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-β (TNF-β), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α-related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), CD40 ligand (CD40L), LT-α, LT-β, OX4OL, CD4OL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L, 4-1BBL, APRIL, LIGHT, TL1, TNFSF16, TNFSF17, and AITR-L. In a preferred embodiment, a primary effector molecule of the invention is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-β (TNF-β), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α-related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), and CD40 ligand (CD40L), or a functional fragment thereof. For review see, *e.g.*, Kwon, B. *et al.*, 1999, Curr. Opin. Immunol. 11:340-345, which describes members of the TNF family. Also, Table 1 herein below, lists classic and standardized nomenclature of exemplary members of the TNF family. In a preferred embodiment of the invention the primary effector molecule of the invention is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-β (TNF-β), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α-related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), or CD40 ligand (CD40L).

TABLE 1

TNF FAMILY MEMBERS	
Classic Nomencalture	**Standardized Nomenclature**
LT-α	TNFSF1
TNF-α	TNFSF2
LT-β	TNFSF3
OX4OL	TNFSF4
CD4OL	TNFSF5
$F_{as}L$	TNFSF6
CD27L	TNFSF7
CD30L	TNFSF8
4-1BBL	TNFSF9
TRAIL	TNFSF10
TRANCE	TNFSF11
TWEAK	TNFSF12
APRIL	TNFSF13
LIGHT	TNFSF14
TL1	TNFSF15
---	TNFSF16
---	TNFSF17
AITR-L	TNFSF18

In another specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are anti-angiogenic factors or functional fragments thereof. Examples of anti-angiogenic factors, include, but are not limited to, endostatin, angiostatin, apomigren, anti-angiogenic antithrombin III, the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin, a uPA receptor antagonist, the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin, the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic 24 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of thrombospondin I, the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, RGD and NGR containing peptides, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen and EGF, and peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$ and the VEGF receptor.

In a preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is endostatin. Naturally occurring endostatin consists of the C-terminal ~180 amino acids of collagen XVIII (cDNAs encoding two splice forms of collagen XVIII have Genbank Accession No. AF18081 and AF18082).

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is plasminogen fragments (the coding sequence for plasminogen can be found in Genbank Accession No. NM_000301 and A33096). Angiostatin peptides naturally include the four kringle domains of plasminogen, kringle 1 through kringle 4. It has been demonstrated that recombinant kringle 1, 2 and 3 possess the anti-angiogenic properties of the native peptide, whereas kringle 4 has no such activity (Cao et al., 1996, J. Biol. Chem. 271:29461-29467). Accordingly, the angiostatin effector molecule of the invention comprises at least one and preferably more than one kringle domain selected from the group consisting of kringle 1, kringle 2 and kringle 3. In a specific embodiment, the primary effector molecule of the invention is a human angiostatin molecule selected from the group consisting of 40 kDa isoform, the 42 kDa isoform, the 45 kDa isoform, or a combination thereof. In another embodiment, the primary effector molecule is the kringle 5 domain of plasminogen, which is a more potent inhibitor of angiogenesis than angiostatin (angiostatin comprises kringle domains 1-4).

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is antithrombin III. Antithrombin III, which is referred to hereinafter as antithrobin, comprises a heparin binding domain that tethers the protein to the vasculature walls, and an active site loop which interacts with thrombin. When antithrombin is tethered to heparin, the protein elicits a conformational change that allows the active loop to interact with thrombin, resulting in the proteolytic cleavage of said loop by thrombin. The proteolytic cleavage event results in another change of conformation of antithrombin, which (i) alters the interaction interface between thrombin and antithrombin and (ii) releases the complex from heparin (Carrell, 1999, Science 285:1861-1862, and references therein). O'Reilly *et al.* (1999, Science 285:1926-1928) have discovered that the cleaved antithrombin has potent anti-angiogenic activity. Accordingly, in one embodiment, the anti-angiogenic factor of the invention is the anti-angiogenic form of antithrombin. For the delivery of said protein to a solid tumor according to the methods of the invention, the bacterial vector is modified to express full length antithrombin Genbank Accession No. NM_000488 and a proteolytic enzyme that catalyzes the cleavage of antithrombin to produce the anti-angiogenic form of the protein. The proteolytic enzyme is selected from the group comprising thrombin, pancreatic elastases, and human neutrophil elastase. In a preferred embodiment, the proteolytic enzyme is pancreatic elastase. Methods for the recombinant expression of functional pancreatic elastase are taught by Shirasu (Shirasu *et al.*, 1987, J. Biochem. 102:1555-1563).

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is the 40 kDa and/or 29 kDa proteolytic fragment of fibronectin. The expression vehicles for these fragments can be generated by standard methods using the full length nucleic acid sequence encoding the fibronectin precursor protein (Genbank Accession No. X02761), and a description of the maturation of the encoded protein. In a preferred embodiment the 40 kDa and/or the 29 kDa fragment of fibronectin is expressed as a cytoplasmic protein under the control of the *trc* promoter, for example by insertion into the pTrc99A plasmid.

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is a urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA) receptor antagonist. In one mode of the embodiment, the antagonist is a dominant negative mutant of uPA (see, *e.g.*, Crowley *et al.*, 1993, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:5021-5025). In another mode of the embodiment, the antagonist is a peptide antagonist or a fusion protein thereof (Goodson *et al.*, 1994, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 91:7129-7133). In yet another mode of the embodiment, the antagonist is a dominant negative soluble uPA receptor (Min et al., 1996, Cancer Res. 56:2428-2433).

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is the 16 kDa N-terminal fragment of prolactin, comprising approximately 120 amino acids, or a biologically active fragment thereof (the coding sequence for prolactin can be found in Genbank Accession No. NM_000948). In a specific embodiment, said prolactin fragment has a Cys58 →Ser58 mutation to circumvent undesired cross-linking of the protein by disulfide bonds.

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is the 7.8 kDa platelet factor-4 fragment. In a specific embodiment, the 7.8 kDa platelet factor-4 fragment is expressed as a fusion protein wherein the amino terminal comprises the first 35 amino acids of *E. coli* β-glucoronidase. In another embodiment, the heparin binding lysines of platelet factor-4 are mutated to glutamic acid residues, which results in a variant protein having potent anti-angiogenic activity (Maione *et al.*, 1991, Cancer Res. 51:2077-2083). The coding sequence for platelet factor-4 has the Genbank Accession No. NM_002619.

In another preferred embodiment of the invention, a primary effector molecule of the invention is a small peptide corresponding to the anti-angiogenic 13 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of thrombospondin I , the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen, or EGF, or small peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$ or the VEGF receptor. In a specific embodiment, the small peptides are expressed in tandem to increase protein stability. The sequences of the small peptides are provided by Cao (1998, Prog.

Mol. Subcell. Biol. 20:161-176), with the exception of VEGF receptor antagonists (Soker *et al.*, 1993, J. Biol. Chem. 272:31582-31588). In a highly preferred embodiment, the small peptide comprises an RGD or NGR motif. In certain modes of the embodiment, the RGD or NGR containing peptide is presented on the cell surface of the host bacteria, for example by fusing the nucleic acid encoding the peptide in frame with a nucleic acid encoding one or more extracellular loops of OmpA.

In another specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides, or functional fragments thereof. A cytotoxic polypeptide or peptide is cytotoxic or cytostatic to a cell, for example, by inhibiting cell growth through interference with protein synthesis or through disruption of the cell cycle. Such a product may act by cleaving rRNA or ribonucleoprotein, inhibiting an elongation factor, cleaving mRNA, or other mechanism that reduced protein synthesis to a level such that the cell cannot survive.

Examples of cytotoxic polypeptides or peptides include, but are not limited to, members of the bacteriocin family, verotoxin, cytotoxic necrotic factor 1 (CNF1; *e.g.*, *E. coli* CNF1 and *Vibrio fischeri* CNF1), cytotoxic necrotic factor 2 (CNF2), *Pasteurella multiocida* toxin (PMT), hemolysin, CAAX tetrapeptides which are potent competitive inhibitors of farnesyltransferase, saporin, the ricins, abrin, other ribosome inactiviting proteins (RIPs), *Pseudomonas* exotoxin, inhibitors of DNA, RNA or protein synthesis, antisense nucleic acids, other metabolic inhibitors (*e.g.*, DNA or RNA cleaving molecules such as DNase and ribonuclease, protease, lipase, phospholipase), prodrug converting enzymes (*e.g.*, thymidine kinase from HSV and bacterial cytosine deaminase), light-activated porphyrin, ricin, ricin A chain, maize RIP, gelonin, cytolethal distending toxin, diphtheria toxin, diphtheria toxin A chain, trichosanthin, tritin, pokeweed antiviral protein (PAP), mirabilis antiviral protein (MAP), Dianthins 32 and 30, abrin, monodrin, bryodin, shiga, a catalytic inhibitor of protein biosynthesis from cucumber seeds (see, *e.g.*, International Publication WO 93/24620), *Pseudomonas* exotoxin, *E. coli* heat-labile toxin, *E. coli* heat-stable toxin, EaggEC stable toxin-1 (EAST), biologically active fragments of cytotoxins and others known to those of skill in the art. See, *e.g.*, O'Brian and Holmes, Protein Toxins of *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella* in Escherichia and Salmonella, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Neidhardt et al. (eds.), pp. 2788-2802, ASM Press, Washington, D.C. for a review of *E. coli* and *Salmonella* toxins.

In a preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule is a member of the bacteroicin family (see *e.g.*, Konisky, 1982, Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 36:125-144), with the proviso that said bacteriocin family member is not a bacteriocin release protein (BRP). Examples of bacteriocin family members, include, but are not limited to, ColE1, ColE1a, ColE1b ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, ColE9, Colicin A, Colicin K, Colicin L, Colicin M, cloacin DF13, pesticin A1122, staphylococcin 1580, butyricin 7423,

pyocin R1 or AP41, megacin A-216, microcin M15, and vibriocin (Jayawardene and Farkas-Himsley,1970, J. Bacteriology vol. 102 pp 382-388). Most preferably the primary effector molecule(s) is colicin E3 or V, although colicins A, E1, E2, Ia, Ib, K, L, and M (see, Konisky, 1982, Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 36:125-144) are also suitable as a primary effector molecule(s). In another preferred mode of this embodiment, the bacteriocin is a cloacin, most preferably cloacin DF13.

In a preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule(s) is ColE1, ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, or ColE9. Colicin E3 (ColE3) has been shown to have a profoundly cytotoxic effect on mammalian cells (Smarda *et al.*, 1978, Folia Microbiol. 23:272-277), including a leukemia cell model system (Fiska *et al.*, 1978, Experientia 35:406-40. ColE3 cytotoxicity is a function of protein synthesis arrest, mediated by inhibition of 80S ribosomes (Turnowsky *et al.*, 1973, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm. 52:327-334). More specifically, ColE3 has ribonuclease activity (Saunders, 1978) Nature 274:113-114). In its naturally occurring form, ColE3 is a 60kDa protein complex consisting of a 50kDa and a 10kDa protein in a 1:1 ratio, the larger subunit having the nuclease activity and the smaller subunit having inhibitory function of the 50kDa subunit. Thus, the 50kDa protein acts as a cytotoxic protein (or toxin), and the 10kDa protein acts as an anti-toxin. Accordingly, in one embodiment, when ColE3 is used as a secondary effector molecule, the larger ColE3 subunit or an active fragment thereof is expressed alone or at higher levels than the smaller subunit. In another embodiment of the invention, the ColE3 50kDa toxin and 10kDa anti-toxin are encoded on a single plasmid within an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*. In this embodiment, the toxin/anti-toxin can act as a selection system for the *Salmonella* which carry the plasmid, such that *Salmonella* which lose the plasmid are killed by the toxin. In another embodiment, the 10 kDa anti-toxin is on the chromosome, separate form the colE3 toxin on the plasmid, resulting in a barrier to transmission to other bacteria. (See Section 5.6, *infra*).

In another preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule(s) is cloacin DF13. Cloacin DF13 functions in an analogous manner to ColE3. The protein complex is of 67KDa molecular weight. The individual components are 57kDa and 9kDa in size. In addition to its ribonuclease activity, DF13 can cause the leakage of cellular potassium.

In another preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule(s) is colicin V (Pugsley, A.P. and Oudega, B. "Methods for Studying Colicins and Their Plasmids" in Plasmids, a Practical Approach 1987, ed. By K.G. Hardy; Gilson, L. *et al.* EMBO J. 9: 3875-3884).

In another embodiment, the primary effector molecule(s) is colicin E2 (a dual subunit colicin similar to ColE3 in structure but with endonuclease rather than ribonuclease activity); colicins A, E1, Ia, Ib, or K, which form ion-permeable channels, causing a collapse of the proton motive force of the cell and leading to cell death; colicin L which

inhibits protein, DNA & RNA synthesis; colicin M which causes cell sepsis by altering the osmotic environment of the cell; pesticin A1122 which functions in a manner similar to colicin B function; staphycoccin 1580, a pore-forming bacteriocin; butyricin 7423 which indirectly inhibits RNA, DNA and protein synthesis through an unknown target; Pyocin P1, or protein resembling a bacteriophage tail protein that kills cells by uncoupling respiration from solute transport; Pyocin AP41 which has a colicin E2-like mode of action; or megacin A-216 which is a phospholipase that causes leakage of intracellular material (for a general review of bacteriocins, see Konisky, 1982, Ann. Rev. Microbiol. 36:125-144); colicin A (Pugsley, A.P. and Oudega, B. "Methods for Studying Colicins and Their Plasmids" in Plasmids, a Practical Approach 1987, ed. By K.G. Hardy).

Accordingly, a primary effector molecule may comprise any bacteriocin described herein or known in the art, with the proviso that said bacteriocin is not a bacteriocin release protein.

In another specific embodiment, the primary effector molecules of the invention are tumor inhibitory enzymes or functional fragments thereof. Examples of tumor inhibitory enzymes include, but are not limited, methionase, asparaginase, lipase, phospholipase, protease, ribonuclease, DNAase, and glycosidase. In a preferred embodiment, the primary effector molecule is methionase.

The primary effector molecules of the invention are useful, for example, to treat, or prevent a solid tumor cancer such as a carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma, or sarcoma.

The invention provides nucleic acid molecules encoding a primary effector molecule. The invention also provides nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s). The invention provides nucleic acids encoding effector molecule(s) of the invention which is operably linked to an appropriate promoter. Optionally, the nucleic acids encoding an effector molecule(s) may be operably linked to other elements that participate in transcription, translation, localization, stability and the like.

The nucleic acid molecule encoding a primary effector molecule is from about 6 to about 100,000 base pairs in length. Preferably, the nucleic acid is from about 20 base pairs to about 50,000 base pairs in length. More preferably, the nucleic acid molecule is from about 20 base pairs to about 10,000 base pairs in length. Even more preferably, the nucleic acid molecule is about 20 base pairs to about 4000 base pairs in length.

5.3. SECONDARY EFFECTOR MOLECULES FOR CO-EXPRESSION WITH PRIMARY EFFECTOR MOLECULES

In certain embodiments of the invention, the primary effector molecule (*e.g.,* a TNF family member, a cytotoxic peptide or polypeptide, an anti-angiogenic factor, or a tumor

inhibitory enzyme) is optionally co-expressed in a bacterial vector with another molecule, *i.e.* a secondary effector molecule. The secondary effector molecule provides additional therapeutic value and/or facilitates the release of the contents of the modified bacterial vector (which expresses at least one primary effector molecule and optionally one or more secondary effector molecules) into the surrounding environment. As used herein, the term "additional therapeutic value" indicates that the secondary effector molecule provides an additive or synergistic, cytostatic, or cytotoxic effect on a tumor, *e.g.*, in addition to that provided by the primary effector molecule(s). Thus, a secondary effector molecule functions as an additional therapeutic factor and/or a release factor. Preferably, the secondary effector molecule, whether a therapeutic or release factor (or both), is preferentially or specifically activated or expressed at the desired site, *i.e.* at the site of the tumor. In certain embodiments, the secondary effector molecule can serve two functions, *i.e.* promote the release of the bacterial cell contents (*e.g.*, by promoting bacterial cell lysis or quasi lysis) and provide therapeutic value (*e.g.*, by cytotoxicity to the tumor cells). In certain non-limiting embodiments, the cytotoxicity of the secondary effector molecule can be mediated by the patient's immune system; accordingly such a secondary effector molecule can function as an immunomodulator.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial vector of the invention is engineered to express at least one secondary effector molecule which has anti-tumor activity, *i.e.* expression of the secondary effector molecule results in killing or inhibition of the growth of a tumor or tumor cells.

The secondary effector molecule is proteinaceous or a nucleic acid molecule. The nucleic acid molecule can be double-stranded or single-stranded DNA or double-stranded or single-stranded RNA, as well as triplex nucleic acid molecules. The nucleic acid molecule can function as a ribozyme, or antisense nucleic acid, *etc.*

Antisense nucleotides are oligonucleotides that bind in a sequence-specific manner to nucleic acids, such as mRNA or DNA. When bound to mRNA that has complementary sequences, antisense prevents translation of the mRNA (see, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,168,053; 5,190,931; 5,135,917; and 5,087,617). Triplex molecules refer to single DNA strands that bind duplex DNA forming a colinear triplex molecule, thereby preventing transcription (see, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,176,996).

A ribozyme is an RNA molecule that specifically cleaves RNA substrates, such as mRNA, resulting in inhibition or interference with cell growth or expression. There are at least five known classes of ribozymes involved in the cleavage and/or ligation of RNA chains. Ribozymes can be targeted to any RNA transcript and can catalytically cleave that transcript (see, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,272,262; U.S. Patent No. 5,144,019; and U.S. Patent Nos. 5,168,053, 5,180,818, 5,116,742 and 5,093,246).

As described above for the primary effector molecule, a nucleic acid encoding or comprising a secondary effector molecule is provided in operative linkage with a selected promoter, and optionally in operative linkage with other elements that participate in transcription, translation, localization, stability and/or the like. Further, the secondary effector molecule can be expressed using the same promoter as the primary effector molecule and an internal ribosome binding site, or using a different promoter than the primary effector molecule.

The nucleic acid molecule encoding the secondary effector molecule is from about 6 base pairs to about 100,000 base pairs in length. Preferably the nucleic acid molecule is from about 20 base pairs to about 50,000 base pairs in length. More preferably the nucleic acid molecule is from about 20 base pairs to about 10,000 base pairs in length. Even more preferably, it is a nucleic acid molecule from about 20 pairs to about 4,000 base pairs in length.

The nucleotide sequences of the effector molecules encoding the secondary effector molecules described below are well known (*see* GenBank). A nucleic acid molecule encoding a secondary effector molecule, which secondary effector molecule is a cytotoxic or cytostatic factor or a biologically active fragment, variant or derivative thereof, may be isolated by standard methods, such as amplification (*e.g.*, PCR), probe hybridization of genomic or cDNA libraries, antibody screening of expression libraries, chemically synthesized or obtained from commercial or other sources.

Nucleic acid molecules and oligonucleotides for use as described herein can be synthesized by any method known to those of skill in this art (see, *e.g.*, International Publication WO 93/01286, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,218,088; 5,175,269; and 5,109,124). Identification of oligonucleotides and ribozymes for use as antisense agents involve methods well known in the art.

5.3.1. FACTORS PROVIDING ADDITIONAL THERAPEUTIC VALUE

In certain embodiments of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial vector of the invention, which expresses at least one primary effector molecule and is preferably a *Salmonella* vector, expresses at least one secondary effector molecule which has anti-tumor activity, *i.e.* expression of the secondary effector molecule results in killing or inhibition of the growth of a tumor or tumor cells or spread of tumor cells, thereby augmenting the cytotoxic or cytostatic action of the primary effector molecule. In one embodiment, the effects on the tumor of the secondary effector molecule are additive to those of the primary effector molecule. In a preferred embodiment, the effects are supra-additive or synergistic, *i.e.* greater than the sum of the effects of the primary and secondary effector molecules if administered separately.

In certain embodiments, the secondary effector molecule is cytotoxic or cytostatic to a cell by inhibiting cell growth through interference with protein synthesis or through disruption of the cell cycle. Such a product may act, for example, by cleaving rRNA or ribonucleoprotein, inhibiting an elongation factor, cleaving mRNA, or other mechanism that reduced protein synthesis to a level such that the cell cannot survive. Examples of such secondary effector molecules include but are not limited to saporin, the ricins, abrin, and other ribosome inactivating proteins (RIPs).

In another embodiment, the secondary effector molecule is a pro-drug converting enzyme or nucleic acid encoding the same, *i.e.* an enzyme that modulates the chemical nature of a drug to produce a cytotoxic agent. Illustrative examples of pro-drug converting enzymes are listed on page 33 and in Table 2 of WO 96/40238 by Pawelek *et al.*, which is incorporated herein by reference. WO 96/40238 also teaches methods for production of secreted fusion proteins comprising such pro-drug converting enzymes. According to the present invention, a pro-drug converting enzyme need not be a secreted protein if co-expressed with a release factor such as BRP (See, *infra*, Section 5.3.2). In a specific embodiment, the pro-drug converting enzyme is cytochrome p450 NADPH oxidoreductase which acts upon mitomycin C and porfiromycin (Murray et al., 1994, J. Pharmacol. Exp. Therapeut. 270:645-649). In another embodiment, the secondary effector molecule(s) is co-expressed with a release factor such as BRP, and cause the release of co-factors (*e.g.*, NADH, NADPH, ATP, etc.) which enhance pro-drug converting enzyme activity. In another mode of the embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is co-expressed with a release factor such as BRP, leading to the release of an activated drug (*e.g.*, a drug which is activated within the bacterial cytoplasm or periplasm, and then released from the bacterial vector).

In another embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is an inhibitor of inducible nitric oxide synthase (NOS) or of endothelial nitic oxide synthase. Nitric oxide (NO) is implicated to be involved in the regulation of vascular growth and in arterosclerosis. NO is formed from L-arginine by nitric oxide synthase (NOS) and modulates immune, inflammatory and cardiovascular responses.

In another embodiment, the secondary effector molecule is cytotoxic or cytostatic to a cell by inhibiting the production or activity of a protein involved in cell proliferation, such as an oncogene or growth factor, (*e.g.*, bFGF, int-2, hst-1/K-FGF, FGF-5, hst-2/FGF-6, FGF-8) or cellular receptor or ligand. The inhibition can be at the level of transcription or translation (mediated by a secondary effector molecule that is a ribozyme or triplex DNA), or at the level of protein activity (mediated by a secondary effector molecule that is an inhibitor of a growth factor pathway, such as a dominant negative mutant).

In another embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is a cytokine, chemokine, or an immunomodulating protein or a nucleic acid encoding the same, such as interleukin-1

(IL-1), interleukin-2 (IL-2), interleukin-4 (IL-4), interleukin-5 (IL-5), interleukin-10 (IL-10), interleukin-15 (IL-15), interleukin-18 (IL-18), endothelial monocyte activating protein-2 (EMAP2), GM-CSF, IFN-γ, IFN-α, MIP-3α, SLC, MIP-3β, or an MHC gene, such as HLA-B7. Delivery of such immunomodulating effector molecules will modulate the immune system, increasing the potential for host antitumor immunity. Alternatively, nucleic acid molecules encoding costimulatory molecules, such as B7.1 and B7.2, ligands for both CD28 and CTLA-4, can also be delivered to enhance T cell mediated immunity. Yet another immunomodulating agent is, α-1,3-galactosyl transferase, whose expression on tumor cells allows complement-mediated cell killing. Further, another immunomodulating agent is a tumor-associated antigen, *i.e.* a molecule specifically that is expressed by a tumor cell and not in the non-cancerous counterpart cell, or is expressed in the tumor cell at a higher level than in the non-cancerous counterpart cell. Illustrative examples of tumor-associated antigens are described in Kuby, *Immunology*, W.H. Freeman and Company, New York, NY, 1st Edition (1992), pp. 515-520 which is incorporated by reference herein. Other examples of tumor-associated antigens are known to those of skill in the art.

In another embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is a Flt-3 ligand or nucleic acid encoding the same. In another embodiment, a secondary molecule is BRP.

In a specific embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is not a TNF family member when the primary effector molecule is a TNF family member. In another specific embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is not an anti-angiogenic factor when the primary effector molecule is an anti-angiogenic factor. In another specific embodiment, a secondary molecule is not a cytotoxic peptide or polypeptide when the secondary molecule is a cytotoxic peptide or polypeptide. In another specific embodiment, a secondary molecule is not a tumor inhibiting enzyme when the primary effector molecule is a a tumor inhibiting enzyme.

5.3.2. FACTORS THAT PROMOTE THE RELEASE OF ANTI-TUMOR EFFECTOR MOLECULES INTO THE TUMOR ENVIRONMENT

In certain other embodiments of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial vector of the invention, which expresses at least one primary effector molecule and is preferably a *Salmonella* vector, expresses at least one secondary effector molecule which functions to permeabilize the bacteria cell membrane(s) or enhance the release of intracellular components into the extracellular environment, *e.g.* at the tumor site, thereby enhancing the delivery of the primary and/or secondary effector molecule(s). Such secondary effector molecule which permeabilizes the bacterial cell or enhances release is designated "a release factor". In certain embodiments, the release factor also advantageously has anti-tumor activity.

The release factor expressed by the bacterial vector of the invention may be endogenous to the modified attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria or it may be exogenous (*e.g.*, encoded by a nucleic acid that is not native to the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria). A release factor may be encoded by a nucleic acid comprising a plasmid, or by a nucleic acid which is integrated into the genome of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. A release factor may be encoded by the same nucleic acid or plasmid that encodes a primary effector molecule, or by a separate nucleic acid or plasmid. A release factor may be encoded by the same nucleic acid or plasmid that encodes a secondary effector molecule, or by a separate nucleic acid or plasmid. In one embodiment, the release factor is expressed in a cell which also expresses a fusion protein comprising a primary effector molecule fused to an Omp-like protein. In this embodiment, the co-expression of the release factor allows for enhanced release of the fusion protein from the periplasmic space.

In a preferred embodiment, such a factor is one of the Bacteriocin Release Proteins, or BRPs (herein referred to in the generic as BRP). The BRP employed in the invention can originate from any source known in the art including but not limited to the cloacin DF13 plasmid, one of colicin E1-E9 plasmids, or from colicin A, N or D plasmids. In a preferred embodiment, the BRP is of cloacin DF13 (pCloDF13 BRP).

Generally, BRPs are 45-52 amino acid peptides that are initially synthesized as precursor molecules (PreBRP) with signal sequences that are not cleaved by signal endopeptidases. BRP activity is thought to be mediated, at least in part, by the detergent-resistant outer membrane phopholipase A (PldA) and is usually associated with an increase in the degradation of outer membrane phospholipid (for a general review on BRPs, see van der Wal *et al.*, 1995, FEMS Microbiology Review 17:381-399). Without limitation as to mechanism, BRP promotes the preferential release of periplasmic components, although the release of cytoplasmic components is also detected to a lesser extent. When moderately overexpressed, BRP may cause the bacterial membrane to become fragile, inducing quasi-lysis and high release of cytoplasmic components. Additionally, it is thought that when BRP is expressed at superhigh levels, the protein can cause bacterial cell lysis, thus delivering cellular contents by lytic release. In this embodiment, BRP expression may be correlated with BRP activity (*e.g.*, release of bacterial contents). For example, superhigh BRP activity results in bacterial cell lysis of substantially all bacteria. Thus, as used herein, "superhigh expression" is defined as the expression level of BRP which results in bacterial cell lysis of substantially all bacteria. Moderate BRP activity, is associated with partial or enhanced release of bacterial contents as compared to a control bacteria which is not expressing BRP, without obligate lysis of the bacteria. Thus, in this embodiment, moderate overexpression of BRP is defined as the expression level at which release of cytoplasmic components is enhanced, without bacterial lysis of substantially all of the bacteria. Substantially all of the bacteria, as used herein, is more than 60% of the bacteria,

preferably more than 70%, more preferably 80%, still more preferably more than 90% and most preferably 90-100% of bacteria.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, the BRP protein is a pCloDF13 BRP mutant whose lytic function has been uncoupled from its protein release function, thereby enhancing protein release without bacterial lysis (van der Wal *et al.*, 1998, App. Env. Microbiol. 64:392-398). This embodiment allows for prolonged protein release from the bacterial vector, while reducing the need for frequent administration of the vector. In another specific embodiment, the BRP of the invention is a pCloDF13 BRP with a shortened C-terminus, which in addition to protein release causes cell lysis (Luirink *et al.*, 1989, J. Bacteriol. 171:2673-2679).

In another embodiment of the invention, the enhanced release system comprises overexpression of a porin protein; *see e.g.*, Sugawara, E. and Nikaido, H., 1992, J. Biol. Chem.267:2507-11.

In certain embodiments when a BRP is expressed by the bacterial vector of the invention, the BRP may be endogenous to the modified attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria or it may be exogenous (*e.g.*, encoded by a nucleic acid that is not native to the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria). A BRP may be encoded by a nucleic acid comprising a plasmid, or by a nucleic acid which is integrated into the genome of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. A BRP may be encoded by the same nucleic acid or plasmid that encodes a primary effector molecule, or by a separate nucleic acid or plasmid. A BRP may be encoded by the same nucleic acid or plasmid that encodes a secondary effector molecule, or by a separate nucleic acid or plasmid. In one embodiment, the BRP-like protein is expressed in a cell which also expresses a fusion protein comprising an effector molecule fused to an Omp-like protein. In this embodiment, the co-expression of the BRP allows for enhanced release of the fusion protein.

In a preferred specific embodiment of the invention a BRP encoding nucleic acid is encoded by a colicin plasmid. In another specific embodiment of the invention, the BRP encoding nucleic acid is expressed under the control of the native BRP promoter, which is an SOS promoter that responds to stress (*e.g.*, conditions that lead to DNA damage such as UV light) in its normal host (for BRP, *Enterococcus cloacae*), yet is partially constitutive in *Salmonella*. In a preferred embodiment, the BRP encoding nucleic acid is expressed under the control of the pepT promoter, which is activated in response to the anaerobic nature of the tumor environment (*see e.g.*, Lombardo et al., 1997, J. Bacteriol. 179:1909-17).

Alternatively, the promoter can be an antibiotic-induced promoter, such as the *tet* promoter of the Tn10 transposon. In a preferred embodiment, the *tet* promoter is a singlemer, which singlemer responds in an all-or-nothing manner to the presence of tetracycline or analogs thereof such as doxicycline and anhydrotetracycline and provides a

genetically stable on-off switch. In another embodiment, the *tet* promoter is multimerized, for example three-fold. Such a multimer responds in a graded manner to the presence of tetracycline and provides a more manipulable system for control of effector molecule levels. Promoter activity would then be induced by administering to a subject who has been treated with the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of the invention an appropriate dose of tetracycline. Although the *tet* inducible expression system was initially described for eukaryotic systems such as *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (Faryar and Gatz, 1992, Current Genetics 21:345-349) and mammalian cells (Lang and Feingold, 1996, Gene 168:169-171), recent studies extend its applicability to bacterial cells. For example, Stieger et al. (1999, Gene 226:243-252) have shown 80-fold induction of the firefly luciferase gene upon *tet* induction when operably linked to the *tet* promoter. An advantage of this promoter is that it is induced at very low levels of tetracycline, approximately 1/10th of the dosage required for antibiotic activity.

5.4. DERIVATIVES AND ANALOGS

The invention further encompasses bacterial vectors that are modified to encode or deliver a derivative, including but not limited to a fragment, analog, or variant of a primary and/or secondary effector molecule, or a nucleic acid encoding the same. The derivative, analog or variant is functionally active, *e.g.*, capable of exhibiting one or more functional activities associated with a full-length, wild-type effector molecule. As one example, such derivatives, analogs or variants which have the desired therapeutic properties can be used to inhibit tumor growth or the spread of tumor cells (metastasis). Derivatives or analogs of an effector molecule can be tested for the desired activity by procedures known in the art, including those described herein.

In particular, variants can be made by altering effector molecule encoding sequences by substitutions, additions (*e.g.*, insertions) or deletions that provide molecules having the same or increased anti-tumor function relative to the wild-type effector molecule. For example, the variants of the invention include, but are not limited to, those containing, as a primary amino acid sequence, all or part of the amino acid sequence of an effector molecule, including altered sequences in which functionally equivalent amino acid residues are substituted for residues within the sequence resulting in a silent change, *i.e.*, the altered sequence has at least one conservative substitution.

Any of the primary or secondary effector-encoding nucleic acids that are of mammalian origin can be altered to employ bacterial codon usage by methods known in the art. Preferred codon usage is exemplified in Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Green Publishing Associates, Inc., and John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, and Zhang et al., 1991, Gene 105:61-72.

In a specific embodiment, a derivative, analog or variant of a primary or secondary molecule comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the nucleotide sequence encoding the primary or secondary molecule, or fragment thereof under stringent conditions, *e.g.*, hybridization to filter-bound DNA in 6x sodium chloride/sodium citrate (SSC) at about 45 ºC followed by one or more washes in 0.2xSSC/0.1% SDS at about 50-65 ° C, under highly stringent conditions, *e.g.*, hybridization to filter-bound nucleic acid in 6xSSC at about 45 ºC followed by one or more washes in 0.1xSSC/0.2% SDS at about 68 ºC, or under other stringent hybridization conditions which are known to those of skill in the art (see, for example, Ausubel, F.M. et al., eds. , 1989, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Vol. I, Green Publishing Associates, Inc. and John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York at pages 6.3.1-6.3.6 and 2.10.3).

Derivatives or analogs of a primary or secondary effector molecule include but are not limited to those molecules comprising regions that are substantially homologous to the primary or secondary effector molecule or fragment thereof (*e.g.,* in various embodiments, at least 60% or 70% or 80% or 90% or 95% identity over an amino acid sequence of identical size without any insertions or deletions or when compared to an aligned sequence in which the alignment is done by a computer homology program known in the art) or whose encoding nucleic acid is capable of hybridizing to an effector molecule protein effector molecule encoding sequence, under high stringency, moderate stringency, or low stringency conditions.

To determine the percent identity of two amino acid sequences or of two nucleic acids, *e.g.* between the sequences of a primary effector molecule and other known sequences, the sequences are aligned for optimal comparison purposes (*e.g.*, gaps can be introduced in the sequence of a first amino acid or nucleic acid sequence for optimal alignment with a second amino or nucleic acid sequence). The amino acid residues or nucleotides at corresponding amino acid positions or nucleotide positions are then compared. When a position in the first sequence is occupied by the same amino acid residue or nucleotide as the corresponding position in the second sequence, then the molecules are identical at that position. The percent identity between the two sequences is a function of the number of identical positions shared by the sequences (*i.e.*, % identity = # of identical positions/total # of positions (*e.g.*, overlapping positions) x 100). In one embodiment, the two sequences are the same length.

The determination of percent identity between two sequences can be accomplished using a mathematical algorithm. A preferred, non-limiting example of a mathematical algorithm utilized for the comparison of two sequences is the algorithm of Karlin and Altschul, 1990, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 87:2264-2268, modified as in Karlin and Altschul, 1993, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:5873-5877. Such an algorithm is incorporated into the NBLAST and XBLAST programs of Altschul, *et al.*, 1990, J. Mol.

Biol. 215:403-410. BLAST nucleotide searches can be performed with the NBLAST program, score = 100, wordlength = 12 to obtain nucleotide sequences homologous to a nucleic acid molecules of the invention. BLAST protein searches can be performed with the XBLAST program, score = 50, wordlength = 3 to obtain amino acid sequences homologous to a protein molecules of the invention. To obtain gapped alignments for comparison purposes, Gapped BLAST can be utilized as described in Altschul *et al.*, 1997, Nucleic Acids Res. 25:3389-3402. Alternatively, PSI-Blast can be used to perform an iterated search which detects distant relationships between molecules (*Id.*). When utilizing BLAST, Gapped BLAST, and PSI-Blast programs, the default parameters of the respective programs (*e.g.*, XBLAST and NBLAST) can be used. *See* http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov. Another preferred, non-limiting example of a mathematical algorithm utilized for the comparison of sequences is the algorithm of Myers and Miller, CABIOS (1989). Such an algorithm is incorporated into the ALIGN program (version 2.0) which is part of the GCG sequence alignment software package. When utilizing the ALIGN program for comparing amino acid sequences, a PAM120 weight residue table, a gap length penalty of 12, and a gap penalty of 4 can be used. Additional algorithms for sequence analysis are known in the art and include ADVANCE and ADAM as described in Torellis and Robotti, 1994, Comput. Appl. Biosci., *10*:3-5; and FASTA described in Pearson and Lipman, 1988, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. *85*:2444-8. Within FASTA, ktup is a control option that sets the sensitivity and speed of the search. If ktup=2, similar regions in the two sequences being compared are found by looking at pairs of aligned residues; if ktup=1, single aligned amino acids are examined. ktup can be set to 2 or 1 for protein sequences, or from 1 to 6 for DNA sequences. The default if ktup is not specified is 2 for proteins and 6 for DNA. For a further description of FASTA parameters, see http://bioweb.pasteur.fr/docs/man/man/fasta.1.html#sect2, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Alternatively, protein sequence alignment may be carried out using the CLUSTAL W algorithm, as described by Higgins *et al.*, 1996, Methods Enzymol. 266:383-402.

The percent identity between two sequences can be determined using techniques similar to those described above, with or without allowing gaps. In calculating percent identity, only exact matches are counted.

A primary effector molecule or a secondary effector molecule, or derivatives, or analogs thereof can be produced by various methods known in the art. The manipulations which result in their production can occur at the nucleic acid or protein level. For example, a cloned effector molecule encoding sequence encoding, for example, an effector molecule can be modified by any of numerous strategies known in the art (Sambrook *et al.*, 1989, *Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual*, 2d ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory

Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York). The sequence can be cleaved at appropriate sites with restriction endonuclease(s), followed by further enzymatic modification if desired, isolated, and ligated *in vitro*. In the production of a modified effector molecule encoding a derivative or analog of a primary or secondary effector molecule, care should be taken to ensure that the modified effector molecule encoding sequence remains within the same translational reading frame as the native protein, uninterrupted by translational stop signals, in the effector molecule encoding sequence region where the desired primary or secondary effector molecule activity is encoded.

Additionally, a nucleic acid sequence encoding an effector molecule can be mutated *in vitro* or *in vivo*, to create and/or destroy translation, initiation, and/or termination sequences, or to create variations in coding regions and/or to form new restriction endonuclease sites or destroy preexisting ones, to facilitate further *in vitro* modification. In a preferred specific embodiment, an effector molecule-encoding nucleic acid sequence is mutated, for example, to produce a more potent variant. Any technique for mutagenesis known in the art can be used, including but not limited to, chemical mutagenesis, *in vitro* site-directed mutagenesis (Hutchinson et al., 1978, J. Biol. Chem. 253:6551), use of TAB® linkers (Pharmacia), PCR with primers containing a mutation, *etc.* In a preferred embodiment, conservative amino acid substitutions are made at one or more predicted non-essential amino acid residues of an effector molecule. A "conservative amino acid substitution" is one in which the amino acid residue is replaced with an amino acid residue having a side chain with a similar charge. Families of amino acid residues having side chains with similar charges have been defined in the art. These families include amino acids with basic side chains (*e.g.*, lysine, arginine, histidine), acidic side chains (*e.g.*, aspartic acid, glutamic acid), uncharged polar side chains (*e.g.*, glycine, asparagine, glutamine, serine, threonine, tyrosine, cysteine), nonpolar side chains (*e.g.*, alanine, valine, leucine, isoleucine, proline, phenylalanine, methionine, tryptophan), beta-branched side chains (*e.g.*, threonine, valine, isoleucine) and aromatic side chains (*e.g.*, tyrosine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, histidine). Alternatively, mutations can be introduced randomly along all or part of the coding sequence, such as by saturation mutagenesis, and the resultant mutants can be screened for biological activity to identify mutants that retain activity. Following mutagenesis, the encoded protein can be expressed and the activity of the protein can be determined.

In other embodiments, the effector molecules or fusion proteins of the invention are constructed to contain a protease cleavage site.

5.5. FUSION PROTEINS

In certain embodiments, the invention provides a primary or secondary effector molecule which is constructed as a fusion protein (*e.g.*, covalently bonded to a different

protein). The invention provides nucleic acids encoding such fusion proteins. In certain other embodiments of this invention, the nucleic acid encoding a fusion protein of the invention is operably linked to an appropriate promoter.

In a specific embodiment, an effector molecule is constructed as a chimeric or fusion protein comprising an effector molecule or fragment thereof (preferably consisting of at least a domain or motif of the effector molecule, or at least 5, at least 10, at least 25, at least 50, at least 75, or at least 100 amino acids of the effector molecule) joined at its amino- or carboxy-terminus via a peptide bond to an amino acid sequence of a different protein. In specific embodiments, fusion comprises at least 2, at least 6, at least 10, at least 20, at least 30, at least 50, at least 75, or at least 100 contiguous amino acids of a heterologous polypeptide or fragment thereof that is functionally active. In one embodiment, such a fusion protein or chimeric protein is produced by recombinant expression of a nucleic acid encoding the primary effector molecule (*e.g.*, a TNF-coding sequence, an anti-angiogenic factor-coding sequence, a tumor inhibitory enzyme-coding sequence, or a cytotoxic polypeptide-coding sequence) joined in-frame to a coding sequence for a different protein. Such a chimeric product can be made by ligating the appropriate nucleic acid sequences encoding the desired amino acid sequences to each other by methods known in the art, in the proper coding frame, and expressing the chimeric product into the expression vehicle of choice by methods commonly known in the art. Chimeric nucleic acids comprising portions of a nucleic acid encoding an effector molecule fused to any heterologous polypeptide-encoding sequences may be constructed. A specific embodiment relates to a chimeric protein comprising a fragment of a primary or secondary effector molecule of at least 5, at least 10, at least 25, at least 50, or at least 100 amino acids, or a fragment that displays one or more functional activities of the full-length primary or secondary effector molecule.

In a specific embodiment, a fusion protein comprises an affinity tag such as a hexahistidine tag, or other affinity tag that may be used in purification, isolation, identification, or assay of expression. In another specific embodiment, a fusion protein comprises a protease cleavage site such as a metal protease or serine cleavage site. In this embodiment, it is in some cases preferred that a protease site corresponding to a protease which is active at the site of a tumor is constructed into a fusion protein of the invention. In several embodiments, an effector molecule is constructed as a fusion protein to an Omp-like protein, or fragment thereof (*e.g.,* signal sequence, leader sequence, periplasmic region, transmembrane domain, multiple transmembrane domains, or combinations thereof; see *infra*, Section 3.1 for definition of "Omp-like protein").

In a preferred embodiment, an effector molecule (primary or secondary) of the invention is expressed as a fusion protein with an outer membrane protein (Omp-like protein). Bacterial outer membrane proteins are integral membrane proteins of the

bacterial outer membrane, possess multiple membrane-spanning domains and are often attached to one or more lipid moieties. Outer membrane proteins are initially expressed in precursor form (the pro-Omp) with an amino terminal signal peptide that directs the protein to the membrane, upon which the signal peptide is cleaved by a signal peptidase to produce the mature protein. In one embodiment, an effector molecule is constructed as a fusion protein with an Omp-like protein. In this embodiment, the primary effector molecule has enhanced delivery to the outer membrane of the bacteria. Without intending to be limiting as to mechanism, the Omp-like protein is believed by the inventors to act as an anchor or tether for the effector molecule to the outer membrane, or serves to localize the protein to the bacterial outer membrane. In one embodiment, the fusion of an effector molecule to an Omp-like protein is used to enhance localization of an effector molecule to the periplasm. In another embodiment, the fusion of an effector molecule to an Omp-like proteins is used to enhance release of an effector molecule. In specific embodiments, the Omp-like protein is at least a portion of OmpA, OmpB, OmpC, OmpD, OmpE, OmpF, OmpT, a porin-like protein, PhoA, PhoE, lamB, β-lactamase, an enterotoxin, protein A, endoglucanase, peptidoglycan-associated lipoprotein (PAL), FepA, FhuA, NmpA, NmpB, NmpC, or a major outer membrane lipoprotein (such as LPP), etc. In certain embodiments of the invention, the signal sequence is constructed to be more hydrophobic (*e.g.*, by the insertion or replacement of amino acids within the signal sequence to hydrophobic amino acids, *e.g.*, leucine). As illustrative examples, see Sections 7.1-7.4, *infra*.

In other embodiments of the invention, a fusion protein of the invention comprises a proteolytic cleavage site. The protolytic cleavage site may be endogenous to the effector molecule or endogenous to the Omp-like protein, or the proteolytic cleavage site may be constructed into the fusion protein. In certain specific embodiments, the Omp-like protein of the invention is a hybrid Omp comprising structural elements that originate from separate proteins.

In an exemplary mode of the embodiment, the Omp-like protein is OmpA; the same principles used in the construction of OmpA-like fusion proteins are applied to other Omp fusion proteins, keeping in mind the structural configuration of the specific Omp-like protein.

For example, the native OmpA protein contains eight anti-parallel transmembrane β-strands within the 170 amino acid N-terminal domain of the protein. Between each pair of transmembrane domains is an extracellular or intracellular loop, depending on the direction of insertion of the transmembrane domain. The C-terminal domain consists of 155 amino acids which are located intracellularly and presumably contact the peptidoglycan occupying the periplasmic space. Expression vectors have been generated that facilitate the generation of OmpA fusion proteins. For example, Hobom *et al.* (1995, Dev. Biol. Strand. 84:255-262) have developed vectors containing the OmpA open reading

frame with linkers inserted within the sequences encoding the third or fourth extracellular loops that allow the in-frame insertion of the heterologous protein of choice.

In one embodiment of the invention, the portion of the OmpA fusion protein containing the primary effector molecule has enhanced expression in the periplasm. In one aspect of the embodiment, the fusion protein comprises prior to maturation either the signal sequence or the signal sequence followed by at least one membrane-spanning domain of OmpA, located N-terminal to the primary effector molecule. The signal sequence is cleaved and absent from the mature protein. In another aspect of the embodiment, the primary effector molecule is at the N-terminus of the OmpA fusion, rending inconsequential to the positioning of the primary effector molecule the number of membrane spanning domains of OmpA utilized, as long as the fusion protein is stable. In yet another aspect of the embodiment, the primary effector molecule is situated between the N - and C-terminal domains of OmpA such that a soluble periplasmic protein containing the primary effector molecule upon cleavage by a periplasmic protease within the periplasm. In certain aspects of this embodiment, it is preferred that a bacterial vector which expresses a periplasmic primary effector molecule also coexpresses BRP to enhance release of the effector molecule from the bacterial cell.

In another embodiment of the invention, the portion of the OmpA fusion protein containing the primary effector molecule is at the extracellular bacterial surface. In one aspect of the embodiment, the fusion protein comprises an even number or odd number of membrane-spanning domains of OmpA located N-terminal to the primary effector molecule. In another aspect of the embodiment, the primary effector molecule is situated between two extracellular loops of OmpA for presentation to the tumor cell by the bacterial cell. In specific embodiments, the invention provides expression plasmids of effector molecule fusion proteins at the bacterial extracellular surface. For example, the plasmid denoted Trc(lpp)*ompA*, comprises a *trc* promoter-driven lipopolyprotein (lpp) anchor sequence fused to a truncated *ompA* transmembrane sequence. As another example, the plasmid is denoted Trc*ompA* comprises a *trc* promoter-driven *ompA* encoding signal sequence. Such plasmids may be constructed to comprise a nucleic acid encoding one or more effector molecule(s) of the invention.

Optionally, an effector molecule is preceded or flanked by consensus cleavage sites for a metalloprotease or serine protease that is abundant in tumors, for release of the effector molecule into the tumor environment. Whether the primary effector molecule is preceded or flanked by protease cleavage sites depends on whether it is located terminally or internally in the fusion protein, respectively.

Similar fusion proteins may be constructed with any of the Omp-like proteins using the strategies described above in terms of OmpA. In the construction of such fusion proteins, as will be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, the selection of the portion

of the Omp-like protein to be fused to an effector molecule will depend upon the location that is desired for the expression of the effector molecule (*e.g.*, periplasmic, extracellular, membrane bound, *etc.*). Such fusion protein constructions as described herein for primary effector molecules are also appropriate for secondary effector molecules.

In a preferred embodiment, an effector molecule is fused to a ferry peptide. Ferry peptides used in fusion proteins have been shown to facilitate the delivery of a polypeptide or peptide of interest to virtually any cell within diffusion limits of its production or introduction (see., *e.g.*, Bayley, 1999, Nature Biotechnology 17:1066-1067; Fernandez *et al.*, 1998, Nature Biotechnology 16:418-420; and Derossi *et al.*, 1998, Trends Cell Biol. 8:84-87). Accordingly, engineering attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria to express fusion proteins comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule enhances the ability of an effector molecule to be internalized by tumor cells. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express a nucleic acid molecule encoding a fusion protein comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In another embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In accordance with these embodiments, the effector molecule may be a primary or secondary effector molecule. Examples of ferry peptides include, but are not limited to, peptides derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetratin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), herpes simplex virus VP22, polyhistadine (*e.g.*, hexahistadine; 6H), polylysine (*e.g.*, hexalysine; 6K), and polyarginine (*e.g.*, hexaarginine; 6R) (see, *e.g.*, Blanke *et al.*, 1996, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 93:8437-8442).

In another preferred embodiment, a fusion protein comprises a signal peptide, ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In a specific mode of this embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal sequence, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In accordance with this mode, the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

In another preferred embodiment, a fusion protein comprises a signal peptide, a protolytic cleavage site, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule to a solid tumor by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. In a specific embodiment, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins comprising a signal sequence, a protolytic cleavage site, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule. In accordance with this embodiment, the effector molecule may be a primary or secondary effector molecule.

By way of non-limiting example, colicin activity may be enhanced by addition of internalizing peptides derived from HIV TAT, herpes simplex virus VP22, antennapaedia,

6H, 6K, and 6R. The fusion can be either C-terminal, N-terminal, or internal. Internal fusions are especially preferred where the fusion follows the N-terminal signal sequence cleavage peptide. The fusion protein may further comprise an N-terminal signal sequence such OmpA or a C-terminal signal sequence such as hlyA.

In a preferred embodiment, an effector molecule is fused to the delivery portion of a toxin. Various toxins are known to have self-delivery capacity, where one portion of the toxin acts as a delivery agent for the second portion of the toxin. For example, Ballard *et al.*, 1996, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 93:12531-12534 demonstrated that the anthrax protective agent (PA) which mediates the entry of lethal factor (LF) and edema factor into the cytosolic compartment of mammalian cells, is also capable of mediating entry of protein fusions to a truncated form of LF (LFn; 255 amino acid residues). Thus, effector molecules of the invention, except those that function outside the cell, can be fused to the LFn, or other toxin systems, including, but limited to, diptheria toxin A chain residues 1-193 (Blanke *et al.*, 1996, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 93:8437-8442), cholera toxin, verotoxin, *E. coli* heat labile toxins (LTs), *E. coli* heat stable toxins (STs), entero-hemolysins, enterotoxins, cytotoxins, EAggEC stable toxin 1 (EAST), CNFs, cytolethal distending toxin, α-hemolysins, β-hemolysins, and *ShetA* hemolysins (for review see, *e.g.*, O'Brien and Holmes, 1996. Protein toxins of *Escherichia coli* and Salmonella. Cellular and Molecular Biology, Neidhardt et al. (eds), ASM Press, Washington, D.C., pp2788-2802). In a specific embodiment, a primary effector molecule is fused to the delivery portion of a toxin. In another specific embodiment, a secondary effector molecule is fused to the delivery portion of a toxin.

Construction of fusion proteins for expression in bacteria are well known in the art and such methods are within the scope of the invention. (See, *e.g.*, Makrides, S., 1996, Microbiol. Revs 60:512-538 which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety).

5.6. EXPRESSION VEHICLES

The present invention provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria which have been engineered to encode one or more primary effector molecules and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecules. The invention provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising effector molecule(s) which are encoded by a plasmid or transfectable nucleic acid. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*. When more than one effector molecule (*e.g.*, primary or secondary) is expressed in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, the effector molecules may be encoded by the same plasmid or nucleic acid, or by more than one plasmid or nucleic acid molecule. The invention also provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising effector molecule(s) which are encoded by a nucleic acid molecule which is integrated into the bacterial genome. Integrated effector molecule(s) may be

endogenous to an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, or may be introduced into the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria (*e.g.*, by introduction of a nucleic acid which encodes the effector molecule, such as a plasmid, transfectable nucleic acid, transposon, etc.) such that the nucleic acid molecule encoding the effector molecule becomes integrated into the genome of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*. The invention provides a nucleic acid molecule encoding an effector molecule which nucleic acid is operably linked to an appropriate promoter. A promoter operably linked to a nucleic acid molecule encoding an effector molecule may be homologous (*i.e.*, native) or heterologous (*i.e.*, not native to the nucleic acid molcule encoding the effector molecule).

The nucleotide sequence coding for an effector molecule of the invention or a functionally active analog or fragment or other derivative thereof, can be inserted into an appropriate expression vehicle, *e.g.*, a plasmid which contains the necessary elements for the transcription and translation of the inserted protein-coding sequence. The necessary transcriptional and translational signals can be supplied by the effector molecule and/or its flanking regions. Alternatively, an expression vehicle is constructed by inserting a structural DNA sequence encoding a desired protein together with suitable translation initiation and termination signals in operable reading phase with a functional promoter using one of a variety of methods known in the art for the manipulation of DNA. See, generally, Sambrook et al., 1989, *Molecular Biology: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Press, Cold Spring Harbor, NY; Ausubel et al., 1995, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Greene Publishing, New York, NY. These methods may include *in vitro* recombinant DNA and synthetic techniques and *in vivo* recombinants (genetic recombination). The invention provides a nucleic acid molecule encoding an effector molecule which nucleic acid is operably linked to an appropriate promoter.

The present invention also provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria which have been modified to encode one or more fusion proteins and optionally, one or more effector molecules. The invention provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising fusion proteins which are encoded by a plasmid or transfectable nucleic acid. When more than one fusion protein and/or effector molecule (*e.g.*, primary or secondary) is expressed in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, the fusion proteins and/or effector molecules may be encoded by the same plasmid or nucleic acid, or by more than one plasmid or nucleic acid. The invention also provides attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising fusion proteins which are encoded by a nucleic acid which is integrated into the bacterial genome. The invention also provides a nucleic acid molecule encoding an fusion protein which nucleic acid molecule is operably linked to an appropriate promoter. The nucleotide sequence coding for a fusion protein of the invention can be inserted into an

appropriate expression vehicle, *e.g.*, a plasmid which contains the necessary elements for the transcription and translation of the inserted protein-coding sequence.

In certain specific embodiments of the invention, the expression vehicle of the invention is a plasmid. Large numbers of suitable plasmids are known to those of skill in the art and are commercially available for generating the recombinant constructs of the present invention.

Such commercial plasmids include, for example, pKK223-3 (Pharmacia Fine Chemicals, Uppsala, Sweden) and GEM 1 (Promega Biotec, Madison, WI, USA). These pBR322 "backbone" sections are combined with an appropriate promoter and the structural sequence to be expressed. pBR322 is considered to be a low copy number plasmid. If higher levels of expression are desired, the plasmid can be a high copy number plasmid, for example a plasmid with a pUC backbone. pUC plasmids include but are not limited to pUC19 (*see e.g.*, Yanisch-Perron et al. 1985, Gene 33:103-119) and pBluescript (Stratagene).

The following plasmids are provided by way of example and may be used in conjunction with the methods of the invention. Bacterial: pBs, phagescript, phiX174, pbluescript SK, pBs KS, pNH8a, pNH16a, pNH18a, pNH46a (Stratagene); pTrc99A, pKK223-3, pKK233-3, pDR540, pRIT5 (Pharmacia). A commercial plasmid with a pBR322 "backbone" may also be used, for example, pKK223-3 (Pharmacia Fine Chemicals, Uppsala, Sweden) and GEM 1 (Promega Biotec, Madison, WI, USA). These are combined with an appropriate promoter and the structural sequence to be expressed. pCET, pTS (as described in Section 6 herein).

In specific embodiments of the invention, a plasmid encoding an effector molecule is the pTS-TNF-α plasmid, the pTS-BRP plasmid, or the pTS-BRPTNF-α plasmid as described in Section 6 herein.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, the fusion protein of the invention for secretion into the periplasmic space comprising the OmpA signal sequence and the primary effector protein are encoded by the plasmid pIN-III-*ompA*-Hind , which contains the DNA sequence encoding the ompA signal sequence upstream of a linker sequence into which the coding sequence for the primary effector molecule can be cloned. In a preferred specific embodiment, the *lac* inducible promoter of pIN-III-*ompA*-Hind vector is replaced by a pepT or tet promoter. (See, Rentier-Delrue et al. (1988), Nuc. Acids Res. 16:8726).

The present invention also provides transposon-mediated chromosomal integration of effector molecules. Any transposon plasmid known in the art may be used in the methods of the invention so long as a nucleic acid encoding an effector molecule can be constructed into the transposon cassette. For example, the invention provides a transposon plasmid, comprising a transposon or minitransposon, and an MCS.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the plasmid of the invention is a transposon plasmid, *i.e.*, comprises a transposon in which the sequence encoding an effector molecule of interest is inserted. Transposon plasmids contain trasposon cassettes which cassette becomes integrated into the bacterial genome. Accordingly, a nucleic acid encoding an effector molecule or fusion protein thereof is inserted into the transposon cassette. Thus, a transposon insertion integrates the cassette into the bacterial genome. The coding sequence of the effector molecule can be operably linked to a promoter, or can be promoterless. In the latter case, expression of the selectable marker is driven by a promoter at the site of transposon insertion into the bacterial genome. Colonies of bacteria having a transposon insertion are screened for expression levels that meet the requirements of the invention, *e.g.* that express sufficient levels of cytokine to promote tumor cytotoxicity, stasis, or regression.

In certain embodiments, in addition to the transposon, the transposon plasmid comprises, outside the inverted repeats of the transposon, a transposase gene to catalyse the insertion of the transposon into the bacterial genome without being carried along with the transposon, so that bacterial strains with stable transposon insertions are generated.

Transposons to be utilized by the present invention include but are not limited to Tn7, Tn9, Tn10 and Tn5. In a preferred embodiment, the transposon plasmid is pNK2883 (ATCC) having an ampicillin resistance gene located outside the Tn10 insertion elements and the nucleic acids encoding one or more effector molecule(s) is inserted between the two Tn10 insertion elements (e.g., within the transposon cassette). Preferably, the construct is made such that additional sequences encoding other elements is inserted between the two Tn10 insertion elements. In specific embodiments, such elements may optionally include (1) a promoterless copy a selectable marker (e.g., SerC, AroA, etc) for positive selection of the bacteria containing the plasmid; (2) a BRP gene, (3) a promoter for the effector molecule (such as trc) operably linked to the nucleic acid encoding the one or more primary effector molecule(s) (such as TNF-α, or a fusion protein thereof, *e.g.*, an OmpA-TNF-α fusion), (4) a terminator for the nucleic acid encoding the one or more effector molecule(s).

In one embodiment, after the manipulation of the plasmid as appropriate and selection of those clones having the desired construct using the ampicillin resistance properties encoded by the plasmid, the antibiotic selection is removed through plasmid loss and strains having a chromosomal transposon insert are chosen for administering to human subjects (*e.g.*, by plating on selective media).

In another specific embodiment, the plasmid pTS is used which comprises an altered target specificity transposase gene and a minitransposon, containing the coding sequences for a promoterless *serC* gene and an MCS. In another specific embodiment, the plasmid pTS-BRP is used which comprises an altered target specificity transposase gene

and a minitransposon, containing the coding sequences for a promoterless *serC* gene, and alkylating agent-inducible bacteriocin release factor, and an MCS.

In a preferred embodiment, a transposon plasmid for selection of transposon-mediated chromosomal integrants, comprises:

a) a transposase gene, for transposon excision and integration, located outside of the transposon insertion sequence (*e.g.*, outside of the transposon cassette);

b) a wild-type coding sequence corresponding to the selection gene deleted in the bacterial strain (*e.g.*, serC) as well as a ribosomal binding site and terminator for the wild-type gene, but lacking a promoter. This sequence is preferably located immediately following the left TN10 transposon insertion sequence;

c) optionally, between the right and left insertion sequences is a nucleic acid sequence encoding a release enhancing nucleic acid (*e.g.*, BRP); and

d) a multiple cloning site (MCS) located between the right and left insertion sequences, containing unique restriction sites within the plasmid, for the incorporation of effector molecule. The MCS is preferably located immediately following the release enhancing nucleic acid (if used) and just prior to the right TN10 insertion sequence.

In another embodiment, the gene disruption resulting from random integration of effector molecules onto the host chromosome, identifies the suitability of the gene location for effector insertion.

In yet another embodiment, the expression vehicle is an extrachromosomal plasmid that is stable without requiring antibiotic selection, *i.e.* is self-maintained. In one non-limiting example, the self-maintained expression vehicle is a *Salmonella* virulence plasmid.

For example, in one embodiment of the invention, the plasmid selection system is maintained by providing a function which the bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, lacks and on the basis of which those *Salmonella* having the function can be selected for at the expense of those that do not. In one embodiment, the *Salmonella* of the invention is an auxotrophic mutant strain and the expression plasmid provides the mutant or absent biosynthetic enzyme function. The *Salmonella* which contain the expression plasmid can be selected for by growing the cells on growth medium which lacks the nutrient that only the desired cells, *i.e.* those with the expression plasmid, can metabolize. In a highly preferred aspect of this embodiment, the *Salmonella* of the invention has an obligatory requirement for DAP (meso-diaminopimelic acid), most preferably by deletion of the *asd* gene. DAP is a component of the peptidoglycan present in the periplasm of Gram-negative bacteria, which is required for the integrity of the bacterial outer membrane. Absence of DAP results in bacterial cell lysis resulting from the loss of outer membrane integrity. The *asd* (β-

aspartate semialdehyde dehydrogenase) gene encodes an enzyme in the DAP biosynthetic pathway. Gram-negative bacteria which lack *asd* function can be grown by supplying DAP to the culture media. Plasmids, *e.g.* the expression plasmids of the invention, that carry the *asd* gene sequence operably linked to a homologous or heterologous promoter can be selected for by growing Gram-negative bacteria that lack *asd* activity in the absence of DAP (see, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,840,483 to Curtiss, III).

Other non-antibiotic selection systems are known in the art and are within the scope of the invention. For example, a selection system utilizing a plasmid comprising a stable toxin and less stable anti-toxin may be used to select for bacteria which maintain such a plasmid.

In another embodiment, the expression vehicle is an extrachromosomal plasmid that is selectable by non-antibiotic means, for example a colicin plasmid. As used herein, a colicin plasmid minimally encodes a colicin toxin and an anti-colicin, the colicin toxin being more stable than the anti-colicin, such that any bacteria which loses the colicin plasmid is killed as a result of the perdurance of the colicin toxin. In a preferred embodiment, the colicin toxin is the large subunit of ColE3 and the anti-colicin is the small subunit of ColE3.

In other embodiments of the invention, the expression vehicle is a λ vector, more specifically a lysogenic λ vector. In a preferred embodiment, the bacterial host comprising the λ vector further comprises a temperature-sensitive λ repressor which is functional at 30°C but not 37°C. Consequently, the bacterial host can be grown and manipulated *in vivo* at 30°C without expression of the primary and/or secondary effector molecule which may be toxic to the bacterial cell. Upon introduction of the bacterial strain into the subject, the λ repressor is inactivated by normal body temperature and expression of the primary effector molecule, and optionally a secondary effector molecule, is activated.

Expression of a nucleic acid sequence encoding an effector molecule or fusion protein may be regulated by a second nucleic acid sequence so that the effector molecule is expressed in a bacteria transformed with the recombinant DNA molecule. For example, expression of an effector molecule may be controlled by any promoter/enhancer element known in the art. A promoter/enhancer may be homologous (*i.e.,* native) or heterologous (*i.e.,* not native). Promoters which may be used to control the expression of an effector molecule, *e.g.* a cytokine, or fusion protein in bacteria include, but are not limited to prokaryotic promoters such as the β-lactamase promoter (Villa-Kamaroff *et al.*, 1978, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 75:3727-3731), or the *lac* promoter (DeBoer *et al.*, 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:21-25; Scientific American, 1980, 242:74-94). Other promoters emcompassed by the present invention include, but are not limited to, lacI, lacZ, T3, T7, gpt, lambda P_R, lambda P_L, trc, pagC, sulA, pol II (dinA), ruv, recA, uvrA, uvrB, uvrD, umuDC, lexA, cea, caa, and recN (see, *e.g.*, Schnarr *et al.*, 1991. Biochimie 73:423-

431). In a preferred embodiment, the promoter is trc, (see, *e.g.*, Amann *et al.*, 1988, Gene 69:301-15).

In a particular embodiment, in which the primary effector molecule is a colicin expressed under the control of a SOS-responsive promoter, the attenuated bacterial strain may be treated with x-rays, ultraviolet radiation, an alkylating agent or another DNA damaging agent such that expression of the colicin is increased. Exemplary SOS-responsive promoters include, but are not limited to, recA, sulA, umuC, dinA, ruv, uvrA, uvrB, uvrD, lexA, cea, caa, recN, etc.

In another preferred embodiment, the promoter has enhanced activity in the tumor environment; for example, a promoter that is activated by the anaerobic environment of the tumor such as the P1 promoter of the *pepT* gene. Activation of the P1 promoter is dependent on the FNR transcriptional activator (Strauch et al., 1985, J. Bacteriol. 156:743-751). In a specific embodiment, the P1 promoter is a mutant promoter that is induced at higher levels under anaerobic conditions than the native P1 promoter, such as the pepT200 promoter whose activity in response to anaerobic conditions is induced by CRP-cAMP instead of FNR (Lombardo et al., 1997, J. Bacteriol. 179:1909-1917). In another embodiment, the anaerobically-induced promoter is used, *e.g.*, the *potABCD* promoter. *potABCD* is an operon that is divergently expressed from *pepT* under anaerobic conditions. The promoter in the *pepT* gene responsible for this expression has been isolated (Lombardo et al., 1997, J. Bacteriol. 179:1909-1917) and can be used according to the methods of the present invention.

Alternatively, the promoter can be an antibiotic-induced promoter, such as the *tet* promoter of the Tn10 transposon. In a preferred embodiment, the *tet* promoter is multimerized, for example three-fold. Promoter activity would then be induced by administering to a subject who has been treated with the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of the invention an appropriate dose of tetracycline. Although the *tet* inducible expression system was initially described for eukaryotic systems such as *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (Faryar and Gatz, 1992, Current Genetics 21:345-349) and mammalian cells (Lang and Feingold, 1996, Gene 168:169-171), recent studies extend its applicability to bacterial cells. For example, Stieger *et al.* (1999, Gene 226:243-252) have shown 80-fold induction of the firefly luciferase gene upon tet induction when operably linked to the *tet* promoter. An advantage of this promoter is that it is induced at very low levels of tetracycline, approximately 1/10th of the dosage required for antibiotic activity.

Once a plasmid is constructed comprising an effector molecule or fusion protein is introduced into the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, effector molecule expression or fusion protein expression can be assayed by any method known in the art including but not limited to biological activity, enzyme activity, Northern blot analysis, and Western blot analysis. (See Sambrook et al., 1989, *Molecular Biology: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold

Spring Harbor Press, Cold Spring Harbor, NY; Ausubel et al., 1995, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Greene Publishing, New York, NY).

5.7. COMBINATION THERAPY

In certain embodiments, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are used in conjunction with other known cancer therapies to treat a solid cancer tumor. In certain other embodiments, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins are used in conjunction with other known cancer therapies to treat a solid cancer tumor. For example, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins can be used in conjunction with a chemotherapeutic agent. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, cisplatin, ifosfamide, taxanes such as taxol and paclitaxol, topoisomerase I inhibitors (*e.g.,* CPT-11, topotecan, 9-AC, and GG-211), gemcitabine, vinorelbine, oxaliplatin, 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), leucovorin, vinorelbine, temodal, cytochalasin B, gramicidin D, emetine, mitomycin, etoposide, tenoposide, vincristine, vinblastine, colchicin, doxorubicin, daunorubicin, dihydroxy anthracin dione, mitoxantrone, mithramycin, actinomycin D, 1-dehydrotestosterone, glucocorticoids, procaine, tetracaine, lidocaine, propranolol, and puromycin homologs, and cytoxan. Alternatively, attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins can be used in conjunction with radiation therapy (*e.g.*, gamma radiation or x-ray radiation). Any radiation therapy protocol can be used depending upon the type of cancer to be treated. For example, but not by way of limitation, x-ray radiation can be administered; in particular, high-energy megavoltage (radiation of greater that 1 MeV energy) can be used for deep tumors, and electron beam and orthovoltage x-ray radiation can be used for skin cancers. Gamma ray emitting radioisotopes, such as radioactive isotopes of radium, cobalt and other elements may also be administered to expose tissues to radiation.

The present invention includes the sequential or concomitant administration of an anti-cancer agent and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. The invention encompasses combinations of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria that are additive or synergistic.

The invention also encompasses combinations of one or more anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria that have different sites of action. Such a combination provides an improved therapy based on the dual action of these therapeutics whether the combination is synergistic or additive. Thus, the novel combinational therapy of the present invention yields improved efficacy over either agent used as a single-agent therapy.

The present invention also includes the sequential or concomitant administration of an anti-cancer agent and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins. The invention encompasses combinations of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins that are additive or synergistic.

The invention also encompasses combinations of one or more anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins that have different sites of action. Such a combination provides an improved therapy based on the dual action of these therapeutics whether the combination is synergistic or additive. Thus, the novel combinational therapy of the present invention yields improved efficacy over either agent used as a single-agent therapy.

5.8. METHODS AND COMPOSITIONS FOR DELIVERY

The invention provides methods by which one or more primary effector molecules which may be toxic when delivered systemically to a host, can be delivered locally to tumors by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria with reduced toxicity to the host. In one embodiment, the primary effector molecule is useful to treat sarcomas, lymphomas, carcinomas, or other solid tumor cancers. In certain non-limiting embodiments, the effector molecule is useful for inducing local immune response at the site of the tumor.

According to the present invention, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacterial vectors containing a nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and optionally one or more primary effector molecules are advantageously used in methods to inhibit the growth of a tumor, reduce the volume of a tumor, or prevent the spread of tumor cells in an animal, including a human patient, having a solid tumor cancer.

The present invention provides methods for delivering one or more primary effector molecules for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters. The present invention also provides methods for delivering one or more primary effector molecules for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters. In one embodiment, the primary effector molecule

is a TNF family member, a cytotoxic peptide or polypeptide, an anti-angiogenic factor, a tumor inhibitory enzyme, or a functional fragment thereof.

The present invention provides methods for delivering one or more fusion proteins of the invention for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters. The present invention also provides methods for delivering one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer comprising administering, to an animal in need of such treatment, a pharmaceutical composition comprising an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters.

In a preferred embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*. In another embodiment, the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprises an enhanced release system. In a preferred embodiment, the animal is a mammal. In a highly preferred embodiment, the animal is a human.

The invention also provides combinatorial delivery of one or more primary effector molecules and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecules which are delivered by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella*. The invention also provides combinatorial delivery of different attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria carrying one or more different primary effector molecules and/or optionally, one or more different secondary effector molecules.

The invention also provides delivery of one or more fusion proteins of the invention which are delivered by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella*. The invention also provides combinatorial delivery of one or more fusion proteins of the invention and optionally, one or more effector molecules of the invention, which are delivered by an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella*. The invention also provides combinatorial delivery of different attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria carrying one or more different fusion proteins and/or optionally, one or more different effector molecules.

Solid tumors include, but are not limited to, sarcomas, carcinomas and other solid tumor cancers, including, but not limited to germ line tumors, tumors of the central nervous system, breast cancer, prostate cancer, cervical cancer, uterine cancer, lung cancer, ovarian cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer, astrocytoma, glioma, pancreatic cancer, stomach cancer, liver cancer, colon cancer, melanoma, renal cancer, bladder cancer, and mesothelioma. The subject is preferably an animal, including but not limited to animals such as cows, pigs, chickens, dogs, cats, horses, etc., and is preferably a mammal, and most

preferably human. As used herein, treatment of a solid tumor, includes but is not limited to, inhibiting tumor growth, inhibiting tumor cell proliferation, reducing tumor volume, or inhibiting the spread of tumor cells to other parts of the body (metastasis).

The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters. The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters.

The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters. The present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins of the invention and one or more effector molecules operably linked to one or more appropriate promoters.

The present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria. The present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more primary effector molecules and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecules. Such compositions comprise a therapeutically effective amount of an attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* vector comprising one or more primary effector molecules and optionally one or more secondary effector molecules, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. The present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* comprising one or more fusion proteins of the invention and optionally, one or more effector molecules. Such compositions comprise a therapeutically effective amount of an attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* vector comprising one or more fusion proteins of the invention and optionally one or more effector molecules, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

In a specific embodiment, the term "pharmaceutically acceptable" means approved by a regulatory agency of the Federal or a state government or listed in the U.S. Pharmacopeia or other generally recognized pharmacopeia for use in animals, and more particularly in humans. The term "carrier" refers to a diluent, adjuvant, excipient, or

vehicle with which the therapeutic is administered. Such pharmaceutical carriers can be sterile liquids, such as water and oils, including those of petroleum, animal, vegetable or synthetic origin, such as peanut oil, soybean oil, mineral oil, sesame oil, olive oil, and the like. Saline is a preferred carrier when the pharmaceutical composition is administered intravenously. Saline solutions and aqueous dextrose and glycerol solutions can also be employed as liquid carriers, particularly for injectable solutions. Suitable pharmaceutical excipients include starch, glucose, lactose, sucrose, gelatin, malt, rice, flour, chalk, silica gel, sodium stearate, glycerol monostearate, talc, sodium chloride, dried skim milk, glycerol, propylene, glycol, water, ethanol and the like. The composition, if desired, can also contain minor amounts of wetting or emulsifying agents, or pH buffering agents. These compositions can take the form of solutions, suspensions, emulsion, tablets, pills, capsules, powders, sustained-release formulations and the like. Oral formulation can include standard carriers such as pharmaceutical grades of mannitol, lactose, starch, magnesium stearate, sodium saccharine, cellulose, magnesium carbonate, etc. Examples of suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in "Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences" by E.W. Martin. Such compositions will contain a therapeutically effective amount of the therapeutic attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, in purified form, together with a suitable amount of carrier so as to provide the form for proper administration to the patient. The formulation should suit the mode of administration.

In a preferred embodiment, the composition is formulated in accordance with routine procedures as a pharmaceutical composition adapted for intravenous administration to human beings. Typically, compositions for intravenous administration are solutions in sterile isotonic aqueous buffer. Where necessary, the composition may also include a suspending agent and a local anesthetic such as lignocaine to ease pain at the site of the injection. Generally, the ingredients are supplied either separately or mixed together in unit dosage form, for example, as a dry lyophilized powder or water free concentrate in a hermetically sealed container such as an ampoule or sachette indicating the quantity of active agent. Where the composition is to be administered by infusion, it can be dispensed with an infusion bottle containing sterile pharmaceutical grade water or saline. Where the composition is administered by injection, an ampoule of sterile water for injection or saline can be provided so that the ingredients may be mixed prior to administration.

The amount of the pharmaceutical composition of the invention which will be effective in the treatment or prevention of a solid tumor cancer will depend on the nature of the cancer, and can be determined by standard clinical techniques. In addition, *in vitro* assays may optionally be employed to help identify optimal dosage ranges. The precise dose to be employed in the formulation will also depend on the route of administration, and the seriousness of the cancer, and should be decided according to the judgment of the practitioner and each patient's circumstances. However, suitable dosage ranges are

generally from about 1.0 c.f.u./kg to about 1 x 10^{10} c.f.u./kg; optionally from about 1.0 c.f.u./kg to about 1 x 10^{8} c.f.u./kg; optionally from about 1 x 10^{2} c.f.u./kg to about 1 x 10^{8} c.f.u./kg; optionally from about 1 x 10^{4} c.f.u./kg to about 1 x 10^{8} c.f.u./kg; and optionally from about 1 x 10^{4} c.f.u./kg to about 1 x 10^{10} c.f.u./kg. Effective doses may be extrapolated from dose-response curves derived from *in vitro* or animal model test systems.

Various delivery systems are known and can be used to administer a pharmaceutical composition of the present invention. Methods of introduction include but are not limited to intradermal, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous, subcutaneous, intrathecal, intranasal, epidural, and oral routes. Methods of introduction may also be intra-tumoral (*e.g.*, by direct administration into the area of the tumor).

The compositions may be administered by any convenient route, for example by infusion or bolus injection, by absorption through epithelial or mucocutaneous linings (*e.g.*, oral mucosa, rectal and intestinal mucosa, etc.) and may be administered together with other biologically active agents. Administration can be systemic or local. In addition, it may be desirable to introduce the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention into the central nervous system by any suitable route, including intraventricular and intrathecal injection; intraventricular injection may be facilitated by an intraventricular catheter, for example, attached to a reservoir, such as an Ommaya reservoir. Pulmonary administration can also be employed, *e.g.*, by use of an inhaler or nebulizer, and formulation with an aerosolizing agent.

In a specific embodiment, it may be desirable to administer the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention locally to the area in need of treatment; this may be achieved by, for example, and not by way of limitation, local infusion during surgery, by injection, by means of a catheter, or by means of an implant, said implant being of a porous, non-porous, or gelatinous material, including membranes, such as sialastic membranes, or fibers. In one embodiment, administration can be by direct injection at the site (or former site) of a malignant tumor or neoplastic or pre-neoplastic tissue.

The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more primary effector molecules and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecules may be delivered in a controlled release system. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more fusion proteins of the invention and optionally, one or more effector molecules may also be delivered in a controlled release system. In one embodiment, a pump may be used (*see* Langer, *supra*; Sefton, CRC Crit. Ref. Biomed. Eng. 14:201 (1987); Buchwald *et al.*, 1980, Surgery 88:507; and Saudek *et al.*, 1989, N. Engl. J. Med. 321:574). In another embodiment, polymeric materials can be used (*see* Medical Applications of Controlled Release, Langer and Wise (eds.), CRC Pres., Boca Raton, Florida (1974); Controlled Drug Bioavailability, Drug Product Design and Performance, Smolen and Ball (eds.), Wiley, New York (1984); Ranger and Peppas, J. Macromol. Sci. Rev. Macromol. Chem. 23:61

(1983); *see also* Levy *et al.*, 1985, Science 228:190; During *et al.*, 1989, Ann. Neurol. 25:351; and Howard *et al.*, 1989, J. Neurosurg. 71:105). In yet another embodiment, a controlled release system can be placed in proximity of the therapeutic target, *i.e.*, the brain, thus requiring only a fraction of the systemic dose (*see*, *e.g.*, Goodson, in Medical Applications of Controlled Release, *supra*, vol. 2, pp. 115-138 (1984)).

Other controlled release systems are discussed in the review by Langer (1990, Science 249:1527-1533) and may be used in connection with the administration of the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more primary effector molecule(s) and optionally, one or more secondary effector molecule(s).

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical pack or kit comprising one or more containers filled with one or more of the ingredients of the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention. Optionally associated with such container(s) can be a notice in the form prescribed by a governmental agency regulating the manufacture, use or sale of pharmaceuticals or biological products, which notice reflects approval by the agency of manufacture, use or sale for human administration.

The present invention also provides methods for treating a solid tumor comprising administering to an animal in need thereof, a pharmaceutical composition of the invention and at least one other known cancer therapy. In a specific embodiment, an animal with a solid tumor cancer is administered a pharmaceutical composition of the invention and at least one chemotherapeutic agent. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, cisplatin, ifosfamide, taxanes such as taxol and paclitaxol, topoisomerase I inhibitors (*e.g.,* CPT-11, topotecan, 9-AC, and GG-211), gemcitabine, vinorelbine, oxaliplatin, 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), leucovorin, vinorelbine, temodal, cytochalasin B, gramicidin D, emetine, mitomycin, etoposide, tenoposide, vincristine, vinblastine, colchicin, doxorubicin, daunorubicin, dihydroxy anthracin dione, mitoxantrone, mithramycin, actinomycin D, 1-dehydrotestosterone, glucocorticoids, procaine, tetracaine, lidocaine, propranolol, and puromycin homologs, and cytoxan.

The present invention includes the sequential or concomitant administration of pharmaceutical composition of the invention and an anti-cancer agent such as a chemotherapeutic agent. In a specific embodiment, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention is administered prior to (*e.g.*, 2 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 4 days, 6 days, 12 days, 14 days, 1 month or several months before) the administration of the anti-cancer agent. In another specific embodiment, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention is administered subsequent to (*e.g.*, 2 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 4 days, 6 days, 12 days, 14 days, 1 month or several months after) the administration of an anti-cancer agent. In a specific embodiment, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention is administered concomitantly with an anti-cancer agent. The invention encompasses combinations of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more

nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins that are additive or synergistic.

The invention also encompasses combinations of anti-cancer agents and attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules and/or fusion proteins that have different sites of action. Such a combination provides an improved therapy based on the dual action of these therapeutics whether the combination is synergistic or additive. Thus, the novel combinational therapy of the present invention yields improved efficacy over either agent used as a single-agent therapy.

In one embodiment, an animal with a solid tumor cancer is administered a pharmaceutical composition of the invention and treated with radiation therapy (e.g., gamma radiation or x-ray radiation). In a specific embodiment, the invention provides a method to treat or prevent cancer that has shown to be refractory to radiation therapy. The pharmaceutical composition may be administered concurrently with radiation therapy. Alternatively, radiation therapy may be administered subsequent to administration of a pharmaceutical composition of the invention, preferably at least an hour, five hours, 12 hours, a day, a week, a month, more preferably several months (*e.g.*, up to three months), subsequent to administration of a pharmaceutical composition.

The radiation therapy administered prior to, concurrently with, or subsequent to the administration of the pharmaceutical composition of the invention can be administered by any method known in the art. Any radiation therapy protocol can be used depending upon the type of cancer to be treated. For example, but not by way of limitation, x-ray radiation can be administered; in particular, high-energy megavoltage (radiation of greater that 1 MeV energy) can be used for deep tumors, and electron beam and orthovoltage x-ray radiation can be used for skin cancers. Gamma ray emitting radioisotopes, such as radioactive isotopes of radium, cobalt and other elements may also be administered to expose tissues to radiation.

Additionally, the invention also provides methods of treatment of cancer with a Pharmaceutical composition as an alternative to radiation therapy where the radiation therapy has proven or may prove too toxic, *i.e.*, results in unacceptable or unbearable side effects, for the subject being treated.

5.9. DEMONSTRATION OF THERAPEUTIC OR PROPHYLACTIC UTILITY OF PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS OF THE INVENTION

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are preferably tested *in vitro*, and then *in vivo* for the desired therapeutic or prophylactic activity, prior to use in humans. For example, *in vitro* assays which can be used to determine whether administration of a

specific pharmaceutical composition is indicated, include *in vitro* cell culture assays in which a patient tissue sample is grown in culture, and exposed to or otherwise administered a pharmaceutical composition, and the effect of such composition upon the tissue sample is observed.

Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention can be tested for their ability to augment activated immune cells by contacting immune cells with a test pharmaceutical composition or a control and determining the ability of the test pharmaceutical composition to modulate (*e.g.*, increase) the biological activity of the immune cells. The ability of a test composition to modulate the biological activity of immune cells can be assessed by detecting the expression of cytokines or antigens, detecting the proliferation of immune cells, detecting the activation of signaling molecules, detecting the effector function of immune cells, or detecting the differentiation of immune cells. Techniques known to those of skill in the art can be used for measuring these activities. For example, cellular proliferation can be assayed by ^{3}H-thymidine incorporation assays and trypan blue cell counts. Cytokine and antigen expression can be assayed, for example, by immunoassays including, but are not limited to, competitive and non-competitive assay systems using techniques such as western blots, immunohisto-chemistry radioimmunoassays, ELISA (enzyme linked immunosorbent assay), "sandwich" immunoassays, immunoprecipitation assays, precipitin reactions, gel diffusion precipitin reactions, immunodiffusion assays, agglutination assays, complement-fixation assays, immunoradiometric assays, fluorescent immunoassays, protein A immunoassays and FACS analysis. The activation of signaling molecules can be assayed, for example, by kinase assays and electromobility shift assays (EMSAs). The effector function of T-cells can be measured, for example, by a 51Cr-release assay (see, *e.g.*, Palladino *et al.*, 1987, Cancer Res. 47:5074--5079 and Blachere *et al.*, 1993, J. Immunotherapy 14:352-356).

Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention can be tested for their ability to reduce tumor formation in animals suffering from cancer. Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention can also be tested for their ability to alleviate of one or more symptoms associated with a solid tumor cancer. Further, pharmaceutical compositions of the invention can be tested for their ability to increase the survival period of patients suffering from a solid tumor cancer. Techniques known to those of skill in the art can be used to analyze the function of the pharmaceutical compostions of the invention in animals.

In various specific embodiments, *in vitro* assays can be carried out with representative cells of cell types involved in a solid tumor cancer, to determine if a pharmaceutical composition of the invention has a desired effect upon such cell types.

Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention for use in therapy can be tested in suitable animal model systems prior to testing in humans, including but not limited to rats,

mice, chicken, cows, monkeys, pigs, dogs, rabbits, etc. For *in vivo* testing, prior to administration to humans, any animal model system known in the art may be used.

The following series of examples are presented by way of illustration and not by way of limitation on the scope of the invention.

6. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF TNF-α BY ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED SALMONELLA

The following example demonstrates that attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, containing a nucleic acid molecule encoding a TNF family member are capable of expressing the TNF family member.

6.1. CONSTRUCTION OF TNF-α PLASMIDS

The plasmids described herein serve to illustrate examples of specific embodiments of the invention. As will be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, promoter and/or effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids such as the *trc* promoter and/or TNF-α encoding nucleic acids may be replaced with other appropriate promoter or effector molecules by methods known in the art.

For plasmid-based bacterial expression of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids using the *trc* promoter, the plasmid Trc99A (commercially available from Pharmacia) or TrcHisB (commercially available from InVitrogen) were used. Both plasmids employ an Nco I site, as the start codon, followed by a multiple cloning site.

6.1.1. THE pCET PLASMID

For plasmid-based bacterial expression of effector molecule encoding nucleic acids using a dual λP_L, or λP_R promoter, the pCET plasmid was constructed as follows. Plasmid pCE33 (Elvin *et al.*, 1990, Gene 87:123-126) was sequentially cleaved with the restriction enzyme *Cla* I and blunt-ended with mung bean nuclease, followed by cleavage with the restriction enzyme *Bam*HI. Next, the resulting 1.4 kb fragment was ligated into a 2.1 kb *Ssp I/Bam* HI fragment of pUC19 (commercially available from GIBCO) to create plasmid pCI. Plasmid pCI was cleaved with restriction enzyme *Bam*HI and blunt-ended with mung bean nuclease, followed by cleavage with restriction enzyme *Afl* III. The resultant 3.1 kb band was isolated. Plasmid TrcHisB was partially digested with the restriction enzyme *Cla*1, blunt-ended with T4 DNA polymerase, followed by cleavage with *Afl* III. The resultant 0.6 kb band, containing the minicistron and terminator, was then ligated into the 3.1 kb pCI fragment to give plasmid pCET. As with Trc99A or TrcHisB, pCET employs an NcoI site as the start codon, followed by the TrcHisB multiple cloning site. Growth of

bacteria harboring any plasmid containing the λP_L, or λP_R promoter, was performed at 30°C.

6.1.2. THE pTS PLASMID

A plasmid, denoted pTS, employing transposon-mediated chromosomal integration and serine prototrophic selection of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids, was constructed as follows. The plasmid pNK2883 (commercially available from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC)) was cleaved with restriction enzyme *Bam* HI and the 4.8 kb band isolated. The *Salmonella typhimurium serC* encoding nucleic acid was isolated from *S. typhimurium* strain 14028 (commercially available from the ATCC) by PCR using a forward primer of sequence GAAGATCTTCCGGAGGAGGGGAAATG (**SEQ ID NO:**1), and a reverse primer, of sequence CGGGATCCGAGCTCGAGGGCCCGGGAAAGGATCTAAGAAGATCC (**SEQ ID NO:**2). The PCR reaction mixture was cleaved with restriction enzymes *Bgl* II and *Bam* HI, and the 1.1 kb PCR product isolated and ligated into the 4.8 pNK2883 fragment to give a plasmid, denoted pTS. A cloning sited immediately 3' to the *serC* encoding nucleic acid was present for the insertion of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids.

6.1.3. THE pTS-TNF-α PLASMID

A plasmid (pTS-TNF-α), for the pTS-mediated chromosomal integration of a *trc* promoter-driven human TNF-α encoding nucleic acid, was constructed as follows. Plasmid PYA3332 is the ASD plasmid PYA272 (see, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,840,483 to Curtiss, III) with the origin of replication replaced by that of the colE1 plasmid (see, *e.g.*, Bazaral and Helsinki, 1970, Biochem 9:399-406). Plasmid PYA3332 was cleaved with restriction enzyme *Nco* I and blunt-ended with mung bean nuclease. The blunt-ended fragment was then cleaved with restriction enzyme *Hind* III and the 3.3 kb DNA fragment was isolated. An *E. coli*-optimized human TNF-α encoding nucleic acid (see, Pennica *et al.*, 1984 Nature 312:724-729; and Salztman, *et al.*, 1996, Cancer Biotherapy 11:145-153) as depicted in FIG.1, was then cleaved with restriction enzyme *Nde* I, blunt-ended with T4 DNA polymerase, and then cleaved with restriction enzyme with *Hind* III. The resulting 0.5 kb fragment was ligated into the 3.3 kb PYA3332 fragment to give plasmid Asd34TNF-α. Asd34TNF-α was then cleaved with restriction enzyme *Bgl* II, and the 1.1 kb fragment, encoding the *trc* promoter-driven TNF-α encoding nucleic acid, and ligated into the *Bam* HI site of pTS to give plasmid pTS-TNF-α.

6.1.4. THE pTS-BRP PLASMID

A plasmid, denoted pTS-BRP, employing transposon-mediated chromosomal integration of the BRP encoding nucleic acid and serine prototrophic selection of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids, was constructed as follows. A *BRP* encoding nucleic

acid was isolated from plasmid pSWI (commercially available from Bio101, Vista, CA) by PCR using a forward primer, of sequence CCGACGCGTTGACACCTGAAAACTGGAG (SEQ ID NO:5), and a reverse primer, of sequence CCGACGCGTGAAAGGATCTCAAGAAGATC (SEQ ID NO:6), and cloned into a TOPO-TA cloning plasmid (commercially available from InVitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) to give a plasmid, denoted pBRP#5. Plasmid pBRP#5 was cleaved with restriction enzymes *Apa* I and *Bam* HI, and the resultant 0.6 kb band, containing the *BRP* encoding nucleic acid, was ligated into the 5.9 kb *Apa I/Bam* HI proto-pTS fragment to give the plasmid pTS-BRP. Cloning sites both 5' and 3' to the *BRP* encoding nucleic acids were present for the insertion of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids.

6.1.5. THE pTS-BRPTNF-α PLASMID

A plasmid (pTS-BRPTNF-α), for the pTS-mediated chromosomal integration of the *BRP* and *trc* promoter-driven TNF-α encoding nucleic acids, was constructed as follows. Plasmid Asd34TNF-α, described above for the construction of pTS-TNF-α, was cleaved with restriction enzyme *Bgl* II, and the 1.1 kb fragment, encoding the *trc* promoter-driven TNF-α encoding nucleic acid, was ligated into the *Bam* HI site of pTS-BRP to give plasmid pTS-BRPTNF-α.

6.2. INTEGRATION OF EFFECTOR MOLECULE-ENCODING NUCLEIC ACID INTO THE *SALMONELLA* HOST CHROMOSOME

The system described here employs Δ*serC- Salmonella* strains auxotrophic for serine or glycine, and plasmids which restore serine/glycine prototrophy upon chromosomal integration into an actively transcribed region. However, it is well known in the art that other selection markers can be used to select for chromosomal integrants, and such markers are within the scope of the invention. See, *e.g.*, Kleckner *et al.*, 1991, Meth. Enzymol. 204:139-180.

pTS or pTS-BRP plasmids containing effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids may be introduced into *serC-Salmonella* strains by a number of means well-known in the art, including chemical transformation and electroporation. Following the introduction of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids, *Salmonella* are grown in ampicillin-containing growth medium for a minimum of 2 hours, and more preferably 6 hours or longer. Bacteria are then placed in medium capable of selecting bacteria prototrophic for serine, *e.g.*, M56 medium. Atlas, R.M. "Handbook of Microbiological Media." L.C. Parks, ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida, 1993. Bacteria harboring chromosomal integrations of effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids are capable of growth in the selective media. Effector molecule-encoding nucleic acid expression is then measured, as illustrated below.

Effector molecule-encoding nucleic acid expression may be measured by any of several methods known to those skilled in the art, such as by enzymatic activity, biological activity, Northern blot analysis, or Western blot analysis.

6.2.1. DELIVERY AND EXPRESSION OF *SALMONELLA*-EXPRESSED TNF-α

A *trc* promoter-driven TNF-α encoding nucleic acid was inserted into the Bam HI site of pTS-BRP to give a plasmid, denoted pTS-BRPTNF-α, as described above. Plasmid pTS-BRPTNF-α was electroporated into an attenuated strain of *S. typhimurium*, strain VNP20009, (see International Publication WO 99/13053) constructed to be serC- such that the genotype was Δ*msbB*, Δ*purI*, Δ*serC* (FIG. 2), by standard methods known in the art. Without limitation as to mechanism, integration of the plasmid into the bacterial genome allows for activation of the *serC* encoding nucleic acid and leads to a *serC*$^+$ phenotype. Accordingly, bacteria harboring a chromosomal integration of the TNF-α encoding nucleic acid were selected by plating the electroporated bacteria on M56 agar plates supplemented with adenine. Bacteria were further characterized for loss of ampicillin resistance, indicative of plasmid loss, and concomitant loss of plasmid-based TNF-α expression.

In order to examine and quantify TNF-α expression by the tumor-targeted bacteria of the invention, *Salmonella* harboring a chromosomal integration of the TNF-α encoding nucleic acids were grown overnight, and a measured sample of the culture was used in Western blot analysis. Specifically, TNF-α expression from a representative *serC*$^+$, ampicillin-sensitive clone, denoted pTS-BRPTNF-α Clone 2, is shown in FIG. 3. Western blot analysis revealed that bacterial protein, corresponding to 3.9×10^7 cfu of pTS-BRPTNF-α Clone 2 bacteria (Lane 1), expressed more than 50 ng TNF-α (Lane 5), indicating expression of TNF-α at levels greater than 10 ng/10^7 bacteria. Therefore, the human TNF-α was successfully expressed from a chromosomally-integrated, *trc* promoter-driven, TNF-α encoding nucleic acid in *Salmonella*.

7. EXAMPLE: ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA EXPRESSING OMPA FUSION PROTEINS

Periplasmic localization of proteins by fusion to various signal peptides is dependent on both the signal peptide and the protein. For example, proteins can be localized to the periplasmic compartment of bacteria by fusion of a signal peptide to the amino terminus of the protein. Without limitation, periplasmic localization is believed to facilitate release of bacterial components (such as proteins) by requiring the component to traverse only a single membrane in order to be released into the surrounding environment. In contrast, cytoplasmic localization requires that the component traverse both the inner

and outer membranes of bacteria in order to be released into the surrounding environment. Further, periplasmic localization of certain protiens may aid in biological activity.

A variety of methods known in the art may be used to target an effector molecule of the invention to the periplasm. This example demonstrates that the fusion of the *ompA* signal peptide to the amino terminus of an effector molecule such as a TNF-α, TRAIL (TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand), and interleukin-2 (IL-2) results in the periplasmic localization and subsequent processing of proteins.

7.1. PROCESSING OF AN *OMPA*-TNF-α FUSION PROTEIN

TNF-α expression in four different clones, expressing a plasmid-based *trc* promoter-driven *ompA*-TNF-α fusion protein in JM109 bacteria, was examined by Western blot analysis of whole cell lysate. Periplasmic localization was demonstrated by cleavage of the precursor fusion proteins to mature TNF-α by signal peptidase, an enzyme located in the periplasm. In all four clones, following induction with IPTG, overexpression of TNF-α resulted in the appearance of TNF-α as a doublet migrating at approximately 20 kd (FIG. 5, lanes 4-7), corresponding to both unprocessed and processed forms. For comparison, a *Salmonella* strain harboring a chromosomally-integrated TNF-α encoding nucleic acids, expressing the mature (processed) form of TNF-α, was used as a positive control (FIG. 5, lane 3). TNF-α expression was not detected in bacteria lacking the TNF-α encoding nucleic acids (FIG. 5, lane 2).

These results demonstrated that fusion of the mature human TNF-α protein to the *E. coli ompA* signal peptide (as depicted in FIG. 4) resulted in periplasmic localization and processing when expressed in *E. coli*. Further, it was unknown whether overexpression of a secreted protein would be toxic to the bacterial host as a result of overwhelming the normal secretory apparatus. The present demonstration of expression of a processed *ompA*-TNF-α fusion protein indicated that the normal secretory apparatus was capable of accommodating the high-level expression of secreted proteins.

7.2. PROCESSING OF AN *OMPA*-TRAIL FUSION PROTEIN

The ability of the *ompA* signal peptide to periplasmically localize TNF family members was extended to TRAIL (TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand), another member of the TNF family. For these experiments, a *trc* promoter-driven TRAIL encoding nucleic acids, encoding the mature form of human TRAIL (hTRAIL), was fused to the coding sequence of the *ompA* signal peptide (as depicted in FIG.6). Two different *ompA*/TRAIL junctions were examined, one encoding an Nco1 site and one encoding an Nde1 site (See FIG.6 for Nde1 containing sequence). Western analysis of both types of clones is shown in FIG. 7. Using an anti-hTRAIL antibody, Western blot analysis revealed that bacteria over-expressing the *ompA*-TRAIL with the Nco I junction expressed both

processed (28.2 kd) and unprocessed (30.2 kd) forms of hTRAIL (FIG. 7, lanes 2-4), whereas bacteria over-expressing the *ompA*-TRAIL with the Nde I junction expressed the processed form exclusively (FIG. 7, lanes 4-7), indicating that the Nde I junction provided more efficient processing.

These results demonstrated that fusion of the mature human TRAIL protein to the *E. coli ompA* signal peptide resulted in periplasmic localization and processing. Further, it was unknown whether overexpression of the secreted protein would be toxic to the bacterial host as a result of overwhelming the normal secretory apparatus. The present demonstration of expression of a processed *ompA*-TRAIL fusion protein indicated that the normal secretory apparatus was capable of accommodating the high-level expression of secreted proteins.

7.3. PROCESSING OF AN *OMPA(8L)*-IL-2 FUSION PROTEIN

A secondary effector molecule (IL-2) was expressed as a fusion protein. Fusion of mature (C125A) hIL-2 to the wild-type OmpA signal sequence, used above for TNF-α and TRAIL, did not permit processing of IL-2. In order to examine the periplasmic localization and processing of the human IL-2 cytokine, mature human (C125A) IL-2 was fused to a modified *ompA* signal peptide, denoted *ompA*(8L), as depicted in FIG. 8. The modified ompA signal peptide was modified by replacing amino acids 6-17 of the ompA signal with those depicted in Figure 8. Expression and processing are shown in FIG. 9 (lanes 6 and 7). Each lane represents a single clone. Results of Western blot analysis indicated that virtually complete processing was observed with the *ompA*(8L) signal peptide (FIG. 9, lanes 6 and 7).

7.4. PROCESSING OF AN *PHOA*(8L)-IL-2 FUSION PROTEIN

A second fusion protein was examined for periplasmic localization and processing of human IL-2, and compared with the fusion protein of Section 7.3. The expression and processing of mature human (C125A) IL-2 fused to a modified *phoA* signal peptide, denoted *phoA*(8L), as depicted in FIG.10 was examined. Expression and processing are shown in FIG. 9. Partial processing was observed with the synthetic *phoA*(8L) signal peptide (FIG. 9, lanes 4 and 5), whereas more complete processing was observed with the *ompA*(8L) signal peptide (FIG. 9, lanes 6 and 7).

These results indicate that localization and processing of IL-2 was provided by different signal peptides. The results also demonstrate that periplasmic localization of proteins by fusion to various signal peptides is dependent on both the signal peptide and the protein.

The results of the fusion protein studies indicate that a secondary effector protein of the invention, such as IL-2, can be expressed and localized to the bacterial periplasm by

fusion with the a protein signal peptide such as OmpA or PhoA. As will be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, other signal sequences can be used to cause periplasmic localization of an effector molecule can be used. As will further be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, other effector molecules of the invention can be substituted for the effector molecules described in the examples herein.

8. EXAMPLE: ANTI-TUMOR EFFICACY OF *SALMONELLA* (Δ*MSBB*, Δ*PURI*) EXPRESSING THE MATURE FORM OF TNF-α

The following experiment demonstrates that an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella* containing a nucleic acid encoding a primary effector molecule (*e.g.*, a TNF family member) can deliver the primary effector to mammalian tumors and cause a decrease in tumor volume.

The ability of TNF-α expression to increase the anti-tumor efficacy of *Salmonella typhimurium* was evaluated in a staged murine Colon 38 carcinoma model. For these experiments, 1 mm^3 tumor fragments, derived from a Colon 38 tumor, were implanted into C57BL/6 mice and tumors were allowed to grow to a mean size of approximately 0.3 g, at which time animals were randomly placed into the following treatment groups (n=10): 1) untreated; 2) *Salmonella typhimurium* (Δ*msbB*, Δ*purI, serC*) (parental strain); and 3) pTS-BRPTNF-α (Clone 2 described above). Mice in each group either remained untreated or received a single intravenous injection of 1 x 10^6 cfu of the appropriate bacterial strain. Tumor size was measured weekly, beginning at the time of bacteria inoculation.

In the group receiving attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* expressing TNF-α, tumor regression was apparent by the second week following treatment, with complete regression observed in 6 of the animals within 4 weeks following treatment (FIG. 11). Tumors in the untreated group progressively increased in size, whereas tumors in the group treated with the parental *Salmonella typhimurium* (Δ*msbB*, Δ*purI*, Δ*serC*) strain displayed partial regression between weeks 3-4 following treatment, after which tumors progressively increased in size (FIG. 11).

These results demonstrate that attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* are able to express and deliver an effector molecule such as a TNF family member to a tumor. Such *Salmonella* are useful in the treatment of tumors and provide enhanced tumor regression results as compared to parent *Salmonella* strains which do not express the TNF family member.

The demonstration of complete tumor regression, by *Salmonella* expressing TNF-α from chromosomally-integrated nucleic acid, indicates that biologically effective expression can result from chromosomally integrated-effector molecule encoding nucleic acids.

9. EXAMPLE: ENHANCED DELIVERY OF NUCLEIC ACID MOLECULES BY BRP EXPRESSING BACTERIA

In order to demonstrate that BRP activity could enhance the release of a plasmid from a tumor-targeted attenuated bacteria such as *Salmonella*, a tumor-targeted attenuated *Salmonella* strain was constructed that contained BRP on a plasmid as well as a second plasmid used as a marker for release (pTrc99a with AMP marker). To assay activity of BRP, the *Salmonella* with or without BRP was grown in culture by standard methods. The resulting supernatant was then cleared of any remaining bacteria by centrifugation and filtration and the cleared supernatant was then added to competent cells and underwent a transformation reaction. These "recipient" cells were then plated onto LB amp to look for uptake of the AMP marker plasmid. An increase in the number of AMP resistant colonies with BRP would indicate that more plasmid was released into the media from strains expressing BRP. Results are summarized in Table 2 below:

Table 2

Plasmid	Average # of Amp Colonies/Transformation
pTrc99a alone	125
pTrc99a+BRP (pSW1)	383

These results demonstrate that the presence of BRP increased the amount of amp plasmid secreted to the media. Thus, transformation into "recipient cells" with supernatants from cells expressing BRP gave higher number of colonies. These results demonstrate that BRP enhanced release of a secondary effector molecule, which comprised a nucleic acid plasmid. Accordingly, the results show that BRP is useful for plasmid release or DNA delivery. In addition, these *Salmonella* strains that expressed BRP and were able to deliver DNA and remained replication competent as a population.

10. EXAMPLE: BRP EXPRESSION DOES NOT IMPAIR TUMOR-TARGETING OR TUMOR-INHIBITING ABILITY OF ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED *SALMONELLA*

The following example demonstrates that attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria can be engineered to express BRP in conjunction with one or more effector molecules to enhance the delivery of effector molecules to tumors without inhibiting the ability of bacteria to target the tumor.

Solid tumor models were obtained by subcutaneous injection of B16 melanoma cells in the right hind flank of C57BL/6 mice. For tumor implantation, cells were

detached from the flask by trypsinization, washed, and suspended in phosphate buffered saline at $2.5x10^6$ cells/ml. An aliquot of 0.2 ml of the cell suspension, for a total of $5x10^5$ cells/mouse, was injected on Day 0. When tumor volumes reached 150-200 mm^3, approximately 10 days after implantation, the mice were randomized into three groups of ten mice and each group received a different treatment. The control group (curve #1 on FIG. 12) received 0.2mls of PBS. Another group received 0.2 ml containing $2x10^6$ c.f.u./mouse of the attenuated tumor-targeted strain of *Salmonella* VNP20009 (curve #2 on FIG. 12). The third group received 0.2 ml containing $2x10^6$ c.f.u./mouse of the attenuated tumor-targeted strain of *Salmonella* comprising pSW1, a plasmid comprising the BRP gene under the control of its native promoter (curve #3 on FIG. 12). The BRP gene is SOS inducible in *E. coli*, although the inventors believe, without limitation as to mechanism, that it is partially constitutive in *Salmonella*, producing low to moderate levels of the BRP protein, which are further enhanced by the SOS nature of the tumor environment. Mice injected with BRP-expressing VNP20009 *Salmonella* showed nearly identical anti-tumor responses to those injected with non-BRP-expressing VNP20009, indicating that the survival or tumor-targeting ability of these *Salmonella* is not altered by BRP expression, nor is their ability to inhibit tumor growth. The outcome of BRP-expression on attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* is in direct contrast to the effect of the expression of secreted HSV-thymidine kinase (HSV-TK), which HSV-TK expression results in the loss of VNP20009's tumor-inhibiting abilities (Pawelek *et al.*, 1997, Cancer Res. 57:4537-4544). Thus, the BRP system can be used to enhance the delivery of primary and/or secondary effector molecules to tumors without further modification.

11. EXAMPLE: pepT PROMOTER EXPRESSION VEHICLES

This example demonstrates the *in vitro* and *in vivo* expression of a nucleic acid molecule encoding reporter such as β-gal under the control of the pepT promoter in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella*.

11.1. CONSTRUCTION OF pepT-BRP- βGAL EXPRESSION PLASMIDS

The pepT promoter was cloned by PCR amplification of the region from an isolated colony of wild type *Salmonella typhimurium* (ATCC 14028) using the following primers:

Forward: 5'-AGT CTA GAC AAT CAG GCG AAG AAC GG-3' (SEQ ID NO:15)

Reverse: 5'AGC CAT GGA GTC ACC CTC ACT TTT C-3' (SEQ ID NO:16).

The PCR conditions consisted of 1 cycle of 95°C for 5 minutes, 35 cycles of 95°C for 1 minute, 65°C for 1 minute, 72°C for 2 minutes and 1 cycle of 72°C for 10 minutes. The PCR product was cloned into the PCR 2.1 cloning vector (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, California), and is referred to as PepT/PCR 2.1.

The PepT/PCR 2.1 vector was digested with NcoI and XbaI. The pepT fragment

was gel isolated and ligated into the β-gal Zterm vector digested with the same enzymes. Zterm (Temporary Genbank Bankit No. 296495) is a promoterless β-gal plasmid generated by cloning the βGal open reading frame into pUC19. The resultant plasmid was called pepT-βGAL.

11.2. *IN VITRO* EXPRESSION OF pepT-βGAL AND MEASUREMENT OF pepT-βGAL ACTIVITY

Salmonella strains YS1456 (CC14 in FIG. 13A; for the genetic make up of the strain, see WO 96/40238) or VNP20009 (CC16 in FIG. 13A) harboring pepT-βGAL were grown under either anaerobic or aerobic conditions to an OD_{600} of ~0.5-0.8. β-gal activity was measured by the method of Birge and Low (1974, J. Mol. Biol. 83:447-457). The results are shown in FIG. 13A, and demonstrate approximately 14- to 24- fold induction of β-gal activity upon growth of the bacteria under anaerobic conditions.

11.3. *IN VIVO* EXPRESSION OF pepT-βGAL AND MEASUREMENT OF pepT-βGAL ACTIVITY

Cells of the *Salmonella* strain YS1456 harboring the pepT-βgal expression plasmids, a BRP expression plasmid (pSW1 from BIO101 (Vista, California), which comprises the pCloDF13 BRP coding sequence under the control of its native promoter) or both expression plasmids were injected intravenously into tumor bearing mice. Five days post injection, tumors and livers were homogenized and bacteria were isolated to show that the presence of plasmids for pepT-βgal and/or BRP did not interfere with the ability of these bacteria to target tumors. In addition, the tumor and liver homogenates were used to measure βgal activity to determine whether active βgal could be measured *in vivo* and whether the pepT promoter was induced in an anaerobic tumor environment. The results, shown in FIG. 13B, indicate very high levels of pepT promoter activity in the tumor environment. There is no significant increase in liver expression of βgal over the background level, which is thought to arise from the low activity of the pepT promoter in the aerobic liver environment and/or the low targeting of the bacterial vector to the liver.

12. EXAMPLE: TETRACYCLINE INDUCIBLE EXPRESSION SYSTEM

This example demonstrates the expression of a nucleic acid molecule encoding a reporter gene such as β-gal under the control of the *tet* promoter in an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella*.

The *tet* promoter was cloned from a mini-TN10 transposon by PCR amplification using the following primers:
Forward: 5'-GGA TCC TTA AGA CCC ACT TTC ACA TTT AAG T-3' (SEQ ID NO:17)
Reverse: 5'-GGT TCC ATG GTT CAC TTT TCT CTA TCA C-3' (SEQ ID NO:18).

The PCR conditions were as follows: one cycle of 95°C for 5 minutes; 35 cycles of 95°C for 1 minute, 60°C for 1 minute, 72°C for 2 minutes; and one cycle of 72°C for 10 minutes.

The ~400bp PCR fragment was gel isolated and cloned into the PCR 2.1 vector (Invitrogen). The PCR2.1/*tet* promoter vector was digested with NcoI and BamHI. The ~400 bp *tet* promoter fragment was gel isolated and ligated into the promoterless β-gal vector Zterm that had been digested with the same two enzymes. The ligation mixture was transformed and the transformed bacteria were plated to tetracycline/X-gal plates. Positive colonies were isolated on the basis of their blue color. Extracts from several positive clones were made, and assayed by the method of Birge and Low (1974, J. Mol. Biol. 83:447-457) for β-gal activity in the presence of tetracycline. One clone was isolated and assayed for β-gal expression over a range of tetracycline concentrations. The results of the assay, which demonstrate the induction of β-gal activity by tetracycline in a dose-dependent manner, are shown in FIG. 14.

13. EXAMPLE: INHIBITION OF TUMOR GROWTH BY ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED *SALMONELLA* EXPRESSING ENDOSTATIN

The following example demonstrates the generation of endostatin-expressing attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella*, and the *in vivo* efficacy of tumor treatment by such *Salmonella*.

13.1 CONSTRUCTION OF ENDOSTATIN EXPRESSION PLASMIDS

Endostatin was PCR amplified from a human placental cDNA library using the following primers:

Forward: 5'-GTG TCC ATG GGG CAC AGC CAC CGC GAC TTC CAG-3' (SEQ ID NO:19)

Reverse: 5'-ACA CGA GCT CCT ACT TGG AGG CAG TCA TGA AGC T-3' (SEQ ID NO:20).

The resulting PCR product was cloned into the PCR2.1 vector (Invitrogen). Hexahistidine-endostatin was PCR amplified using the above constructed plasmid as a template with the following primers:

Forward: 5'-GTG TCC ATG GCT CGG CGG GCA AGT GTC GGG ACT GAC CAT CAT CAT CAT CAT CAT CAC AGC CAC CGC GAC TTC-3' (SEQ ID NO:21)

Reverse: 5'-GTG CGG ATC CCT ACT TGG AGG CAG TCA TGA AGC TG-3' (SEQ ID NO:22).

The conditions for the PCR amplification consisted of 1 cycle of 95°C 5 min; 30

cycles of 95°C for 1 min, 55°C for 1 minute, and 72°C for 2 minutes; and 1 cycle of 72°C for10 minutes.

The resulting product was a DNA fragment with NcoI (5') and BamHI (3') restriction sites encoding human endostatin having the peptide sequence MARRASVGTDHHHHHH (SEQ ID NO:23) at its amino terminus.

The PCR product was digested with NcoI and BamHI and the 550 bp product was gel isolated and ligated into the pTrc99A vector that had been previously cut with the same enzymes. The ligation reaction products were transformed into *E. coli* DH5α and the attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* strain VNP20009.

The hexahistidine-endostatin coding sequence was also cloned into the expression vector YA3334 as a NcoI/BamHI fragment. YA3334 is the *asd* plasmid PYA272 (Curtiss III, U.S. Patent No. 5,840,483) with the origin of replication replaced by that of the ColE1 (Bazaral and Helsinki, 1970, Biochem 9:399-406). Plasmid DNA prepared from positive clones was isolated and transformed into the *Salmonella* strain 8324, which is VNP20009 with an *asd* mutation. This strain was generated according to the methods described in Curtiss III (U.S. Patent No. 5,840,483).

13.2. *IN VITRO* EXPRESSION OF ENDOSTATIN BY ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED *SALMONELLA*

Different strains of *Salmonella* VNP20009 and *E. coli* DH5α strains containing the pTrc99A-hexahistidine-endostatin plasmid were grown to mid-log phase ($O.D._{600}$ ~0.6-0.8), at which point each culture was split, one half receiving 0.1 mM IPTG for induction of *trc* promoter activity and the other half receiving no IPTG.. After three further hours of growth, bacterial extracts were prepared and the expression of hexahistidine-endostatin was confirmed by Western blot analysis with an anti-histidine antibody (Clontech, Palo Alto, California). FIGS. 15A and 15B show the results of the Western blots which demonstrate pTrc99A hexahistidine-endostatin (HexHIS-endostatin) expression in *E. coli* DH5α and *Salmonella* VNP20009, respectively. While the *trc* promoter shows no activity in *E. coli*. in the absence of IPTG, the same promoter is constitutively active in *Salmonella* Hexahistidine-endostatin is expressed a single band of approximately 25kD, which is the predicted molecular weight for the fusion protein.

The hexahistidine-endostatin fusion protein was similarly expressed from the YA3334 plasmid, which utilizes the *trc* promoter to direct expression. A protein of the predicted mass of 25 kDa was detected using the anti-histidine antibody, as shown in FIG. 16. In FIG. 16, all bacterial cultures from which the samples were derived had been induced with 0.1mM IPTG for three hours.

13.3. EFFICACY OF ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED *SALMONELLA* EXPRESSING ENDOSTATIN ON C38 MURINE COLON CARCINOMA

Colon 38 tumor fragments of 2x2x2 mm^3 volume were implanted subcutaneously in 9 week old female C57BL/6 mice. When the tumor volumes reached 1000 mm^3, they were removed, cut into fragments of 2x2x2 mm^3. The fragments were serially passaged for further cycles and the resulting 2x2x2 mm^3 fragments were implanted subcutaneously at the right flanks of female C57BL/6 mice. When tumor volumes reached 150-200 mm^3, approximately 24 days after implantation, the mice were randomized into six groups of ten mice and each group received a different treatment. One control group received 0.2mls of PBS. Another control group received 0.2 ml containing $1x10^6$ c.f.u. of the attenuated tumor-targeted strain of *Salmonella* VNP20009 carrying a control *asd* plasmid, *i.e.* an *asd* plasmid that has no insert, as described in Section 5.6, *supra*. The first experimental group received 0.2 ml containing $1x10^6$ c.f.u. of VNP20009 expressing a hexahistidine-endostatin fusion protein in an *asd* plasmid. The second experimental group received VNP20009 with the same expression construct as the first group and further expressed BRP.

FIG. 17 shows the results of these experiments, which demonstrate the efficacy of tumor inhibition by the VNP20009 strains expressing hexahistine-endostatin. After 60 days of treatment, the median tumor size in those VNP20009 *Salmonella* expressing endostatin was approximately 13% of the median tumor size in control animals, and over 30% less than the median tumor size in animals treated with VNP20009 *Salmonella* harboring an empty vector. Of the surviving animals, many exhibited static tumor growth, as indicated by small changes in net tumor size, and one exhibited a strong regression of the tumor. Incomplete penetrance or effectiveness of the treatment most likely reflects an imperfect delivery system for endostatin, in concordance with O'Reilly *et al.*'s (1997, Cell 88:277-285) finding that endostatin accumulates in inclusion bodies. The delivery system for endostatin is enhanced by the expression of BRP. BRP expression is controlled by its natural promoter, which normally shows an SOS response in bacteria. BRP expression was shown to decrease mean tumor volume to approximately 6% of the mean tumor volume of the control population. Furthermore, within the mouse populations treated with hexhistidine-endostatin and BRP, several of the mice exhibited striking reductions in tumor volume over time, wherein the tumor volume regressed to approximately 10% or less of the initial tumor volume. The effect of BRP is likely to be two-fold: first, BRP itself may possess anti-tumor activity, and second, BRP promotes the release of periplasmic contents and to some extent the release of cytoplasmic contents, including endostatin, which prevents the protein from accumulating in inclusion bodies.

13.4. EFFICACY OF ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED *SALMONELLA* EXPRESSING ENDOSTATIN ON DLD HUMAN COLON CARCINOMA

Cultures of DLD1 cells grown in log phase were trypsinized, washed with PBS and the cells reconstituted to a suspension of $5x10^7$cells/ml in PBS. 0.1ml aliquots of single cell suspensions, each containing $5x10^6$ cells, were injected subcutaneously into the right flanks of 9-week old nude female mice (Nu/Nu-CD1 from Charles River). The mice were randomly divided into three groups of ten animals each, then staged at 10-15 days after injection, or when tumor volume reached 200-400 mm^3.

The first group of mice was the control group, and each received an 0.3ml injection of PBS. The second group of mice received 0.3ml containing $1x10^6$ c.f.u. of the attenuated tumor-targeted strain of *Salmonella* VNP20009 carrying a control *asd* plasmid. The third group of mice received 0.3ml containing $1x10^6$ c.f.u. of the attenuated tumor-targeted strain of *Salmonella* VNP20009 carrying an *asd* plasmid which expresses a hexahistidine-endostatin fusion protein and BRP. The tumors were monitored and measured twice a week. FIG. 18 is a graphic representation of tumor volume after administration of the three treatments, demonstrating the inhibitory effect of the hexahistidine-endostatin expressing attenuated tumor targeted *Salmonella* on the growth of DLD1 human colon carcinoma.

VNP20009 carrying the empty vector PYA3332 was not able to significantly inhibit tumor growth. However, VNP20009 expressing endostatin and BRP was able to inhibit tumor growth. These results demonstrate that the combination of endostatin plus BRP increases the anti-tumor effect of either the VNP20009 carrying the PYA3332 vector (strain 8324).

14. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF ANTI-ANGIOGENIC FACTORS BY ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED SALMONELLA

The following example shows the methodology used to engineer attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella* to express the anti-angiogenic factors thrombospondin AHR, platelet factor-4 and apomigren.

14.1. CONSTRUCTION OF A PLASMID CONTAINING THE NUCLEIC ACID SEQUENCE ENCODING THROMBOSPONDIN AHR

The peptide sequence, TiP 13.40: AYRWRLSHRPKTGFIRVVMYEG (SEQ ID NO:24), corresponding to the anti-angiogenic homology region (AHR) of thrombospondin (see, *e.g.*, Patent application No. C07K-14/78), was reverse engineered and codon optimized for expression in *Salmonella*, resulting in the DNA sequence: GCG TAC CGC TGG CGC CTG TCC CAT CGC CCG AAA ACC GGC TTT ATC CGC GTG GTG ATG TAC GAA GGC (SEQ ID NO:25). Complementary

oligonucleotides (Oligo 13:40-1 and Oligo 13:40-2) were produced to synthesize this peptide. At the 5' end a sequence coding for the processing region of OMPA and an SpeI restriction site were added. At the 3' end, a stop codon was added with a BamHI restriction site. The two oligos were annealed to generate the double stranded DNA fragment. The DNA fragment was cut with SpeI/BamHI and ligated to the SpeI/BamHI cut vector pTrc801IL2 to produce the plasmid pTrc801-13.40 containing the full length modified OmpA leader sequence. When processed, the sequence produces the full length 13.40 thrombospondin peptide.

Oligo 13.40-1:
5'gtg*actagt*gtggcgcaggcgGCGTACCGCTGGCGCCTGTCCCATCGCCCGAAAACC GGCTTTATCCGCGTGGTGATGTACGAAGGCTAA*ggatcc*gcgc 3' (SEQ ID NO:26)

Oligo 13.40-2:
5'gcgc*ggatcc*TTAGCCTTCGTACATCACCACGCGGATAAAGCCGGTTTTCGGGC GATGGGACAGGCGCCAGCGGTACGCcgcctgcgccac*actagt*acac 3' (SEQ ID NO:27)

(Restriction sites are italicized and the OmpA processing recognition site is underlined.)

14.2. CONSTRUCTION OF A PLASMID CONTAINING THE NUCLEIC ACID SEQUENCE ENCODING PLATELET FACTOR-4 PEPTIDE (47-70)

The peptide consisting of amino acid residues 47-70 of the C-terminus of platelet factor-4 (PF-4; see, *e.g.*, Maione *et al.*, 1990, Science 247:77- 79 and Jouan *et al.*, 1999, Blood 94:984-993) was codon-optimized for expression in *Salmonella*. The peptide, which is depicted below, includes a DLQ-motif responsible for inhibitory activity of PF-4 on CFU-GM progenitor cells and a clusters of basic amino acids which is the major heparin binding domain.

Platelet Factor-4:
MSSAAGFCASRPGLLFLGLLLLPLVVAFASAEAEEDG**DLQ**CLCVKTTSQV RPRHITSLEVIKAGPHCPTAQLIATLKNGRKICL**DLQ**APLYKKIIKKLLES (SEQ ID NO:28)

Signal peptide = underlined & in bold
Lys 61,62, 65,66 = major heparin binding domain (in bold)
DLQ (7-9, 54-56) = inhibitory activity on CFU-GM progenitor cells (in bold)

Complementary oligonucleotides (oligo PF4-1 and oligo PF4-2) were produced to

synthesize this peptide. At the 5' end a sequence coding for the processing region of OmpA and a SpeI restriction site were added. At the 3' end, a stop codon was added with a BamHI restriction site. The two oligos were annealed to generate the double stranded DNA fragment. After restriction digest the fragment was ligated into the SpeI/BamHI restricted vector pTrc801 to produce the plasmid pTrc801-PF4. When processed, the sequence produces the full length PF-4 (47-70) peptide.

Oligo PF4-1
5'ctt*actagt*gtggcgcaggcgAACGGCCGCAAAATCTGCCTGGACCTGCAGGCGCCGCT GTACAAAAAAATCATCAAAAAACTGCTGGAAAGCTAA *ggatcc* gcg3' (SEQ ID NO:29)

Oligo PF4-2
5'cgc*ggatcc*TTAGCTTTCCAGCAGTTTTTTGATGATTTTTTTGTACAGCGGCGCCTG CAGGTCCAGGCAGATTTTGCGGCCGTTcgcctgcgccac*actagt*gaag3' (SEQ ID NO:30)

(Restriction sites are italicized and the ompA processing recognition site is underlined.)

14.3. CONSTRUCTION OF A PLASMID CONTAINING THE NUCLEIC ACID SEQUENCE ENCODING APOMIGREN

The anti-angiogenic peptide apomigren (IYSFDGRDIMTDPSWPQKVIWHGSSPHGVRLVDNYCEA WRTADTAVTGLASPLSTGKILDQKAYSCANRLIVLCIENSFMTDARK (SEQ ID NO:31; see, *e.g.,* International Publication No. WO99/29856) corresponds to the C-terminus of restin, which is a proteolytic fragment of collagen XV. Oligonucleotides (oligo Apom5F and oligo Apom6F) were designed to amplify the DNA fragment from human cDNA. At the 5' end a sequence coding for the processing region of OmpA and a SpeI restriction site were added. At the 3' end, a stop codon was added with a BamHI restriction site:

Oligo Apom5F: 5'- ggcttc *actagt* gtggcgcaggcg ATATACTCCTTTGATGGTCG -3' (SEQ ID NO:32)

Oligo Apom6R: 5'- cgc *ggatcc* TTACTTCCTAGCGTCTGTCATGAAACTG -3' (SEQ ID NO:33)

(Restriction sites are italicized and the OmpA processing recognition site is underlined.)

A fragment of the correct size was obtained by PCR using placental cDNA as template. The PCR product was cut with SpeI/BamHI and ligated to the SpeI/BamHI restricted vector pTrc801 containing the modified ompA signal sequnce to produce the plasmid pTrc801-Apom. When processed, the sequence produces the Apomigren peptide.

14.4. ANTI-ANGIOGENIC PEPTIDES PRODUCED BY *SALMONELLA* INHIBITING ENDOTHELIAL CELL PROLIFERATION

pTrcOmpA-Endostatin, pTrc801-PF4 and pTrc801-13.40 plasmids were electroporated into attenuated tumor-targeted *Salmonella* VNP20009 strains. *Salmonella* strains expressing pTrcOmpA-Endostatin, pTrc801-PF4 and pTrc801-13.40 were screened for anti-proliferative activity as described by Feldman *et al.*, 2000, Cancer Res. 60:1503-1506 and Blezinger *et al.*, 1999, Nature Biotech.17:343-348. Five-ml cultures of individual colonies were grown for 4 hours. Cell lysates were produced by resuspending the cell pellet in 1/20 volume HUVEC medium containing 100 mg/ml gentamycin and performing 3 consecutive freeze/thaw cycles. The lysates were cleared by centrifugation and filter sterilized using a 0.2 mm syringe filter. Ten, twenty-five or fifty ml of the lysates were added to human vein endothelial cells (HUVECs) in 96 well plates containing 100 ml basal medium 2% FCS plus 10 ng/ml FGF. As a control *Salmonella* containing the empty pTrc vector were used. Plates were incubated for 72 hours and proliferation was measured by MST assay (Mosman *et al.*, 1983, J. Immunol. Methods 65:55-63).

The preliminary results in FIGS. 19 and 20 show that the platelet factor-4 peptide (PF4-2), the thrombospondin peptide 13.40 (13.40-3) and endostatin produced by *Salmonella* seem to have anti-proliferative activity between 40-60%.

15. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF A BACTERIOCIN FAMILY MEMBER BY ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED *SALMONELLA*

This example demonstrates that attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, containing a nucleic acid encoding a bacteriocin family member are capable of expressing the bacteriocin family member.

15.1. CONSTRUCTION OF COLE3 PLASMIDS

The plasmids described herein serve to illustrate examples of specific embodiments of the invention. As will be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, promoter and/or effector molecule-encoding nucleic acids such as the *trc* promoter and/or bacteriocin encoding nucleic acids may be replaced with other appropriate promoter or effector molecules by methods known in the art.

15.1.1. THE pE3.SHUTTLE-1 INTERMEDIATE VECTOR PLASMID

pE3.shuttle-1 represents the intermediate vector used to create a cassette containing a multiple cloning site and lacZ fragment for cloning/selection into the plasmid vector ColE3-CA38 (SEQ ID NO:34). To facilitate the cloning of BRP into E3, BRP was first cloned onto an intermediate shuttle vector (FIG. 21). This vector contains a lacZ fragment which can be used to select clones on lactose in a bacterial strain with a mutation(s) in chromosomal lacZ. The BRP fragment was then cloned into the E3 plasmid SmaI site (FIG. 22) as a cassette containing the lacZ alpha complementation fragment. The lacZ fragment makes insert selection possible (*i.e.* Lac+) at this step. Although the naturally occurring E3 plasmid has no antibiotic selection markers (FIG. 23), selection for the presence of the plasmid is possible by using a halo assay (Pugsley, A.P. and Oudega, B. "Methods for Studying Colicins and Their Plasmids" in Plasmids, a Practical Approach 1987, ed. By K.G. Hardy; Gilson, L. *et al.* EMBO J. 9: 3875-3884). This shuttle vector should facilitate not only the cloning of BRP onto the E3 plasmid, but any DNA that could be combined with E3 or E3/BRP. The new E3/BRP plasmid was then transformed into 41.2.9 and tested for activity. Preliminary halo forming assays demonstrated that the presence of BRP on the plasmid did not interfere with the ability of this strain to produce E3. To determine if 41.2.9 E3/BRP had enhanced activity over 41.2.9 E3 the amount of lethal units of E3 produced by each strain was determined (FIG. 24). 41.2.9 E3/BRP produces 100% more lethal units than 41.2.9 E3 alone, demonstrating that this strain has an enhanced activity over 41.2.9 E3 alone.

15.1.2. HALO "STAB" ASSAY FOR E3 ACTIVITY

The sensitive tester strain (SK522) is grown to an OD_{600} of 0.8. One hundred µl of tester strain is added to 3ml of warm (~55°C) LB soft agar (for a 100x15mm dish) and quickly poured onto an LB agar plate. The plate is rocked gently to spread the overlay evenly over the plate and the agar allowed to solidify for 10-15 minutes. Colonies of *E. coli* or *Salmonella* for which E3 activity assay is desired are isolated with a sterile toothpick and "stabbed" into the agar. The agar plates are then inverted and incubated at 37°C overnight. The following day a halo or clearing zone appears around the E3 stab as the secreted Colicin E3 kills the sensitive strain. The colonies can be further induced to increase E3 production or secretion by treatment with any of a variety of SOS-inducing agents such as an alkyalating agent (*e.g.*, mitomycin), ultraviolet light or X-ray.

The results of one of the halo assays are shown in FIG. 25. When a bacterial strain secretes a colicin in the presence of a sensitive strain grown on a bacterial lawn on a petri dish, the secreted colicin diffuses out and kills the bacterial cells contained in the bacterial

lawn, lysing them thus creating a clear zone or halo. The size of the halo corresponds to the amount of colicin secreted. The results shown in FIG. 25 show a number of strains. No halos are ever observed around strains not containing the colE3-CA38 plasmid. In the absence of induction, colicin is produced by the *Salmonella* strains. Also evident is that with various types of induction (*i.e.,* alkylating agents, UV light,, X-rays), all of the halos increase in size in a dose-dependent manner.

15.1.3. OVERLAY ASSAY FOR SELECTIVE E3 CLONES

Transformants are plated with various dilutions (up to 1:10,000) onto LB and grown for 2 hours at 37°C. The sensitive tester strain is then prepared as above in the halo assay and an overlay poured with soft agar. After allowing to solidify for 10 minutes, the plate is then inverted and incubated overnight at 37°C. Small clearing zones then appear the following day (which resemble bacteriophage plaques) with a small colony (or colonies) in the middle of the clearing zone.

15.1.4. "PLAQUE" OR HALO PURIFICATION ASSAY

The small colony at the center of the clearing zone in the overlay agar described above is then isolated using a sterile pasteur pipette. In the case of either no visible colony or for the case of multiple colonies in one halo, the entire halo is picked with a sterile pasteur pipette. The colony or halo is transferred into 500µL of LB. Dilutions (up to 1:10,000) are made and replated on LB agar and allowed to grow for 2 hours at 37°C. An overlay is then poured with the sensitive tester strain as outlined above. The following day, all or most of the colonies should have halos around them.

16. EXAMPLE: E3 INJECTION *IN VIVO*, AND DETERMINATION OF THE PERCENT RETENTION OF PLASMID IN *SALMONELLA*

The following example demonstrates the retention of the colE3-CA38 plasmid in *Salmonella in vivo*.

Homogenates of tumor and liver from two mice 30 days post injection of either 41.29 (or 41.2.9E3-CA38) were used for the studies. In the description to follow, L=Liver, T=Tumor. All four homogenates were plated for CFU and colonies were picked for analysis by msbB PCR and for colicin production. Almost pure cultures of colonies similar to 41.2.9 were obtained from all homogenates. Five colonies were picked from each for colicin and PCR analysis. An additional 30 colonies were picked form the 41.2.9 E3 T and L plates for further analysis as there seemed to be a mixed population of colicin producers and non producers in the 41.2.9E3 liver homogenate. Based on these results, an additional 100 colonies from 41.2.9E3 tumor and liver were picked and tested for colicin production

and msbB PCR. Distribution and plasmid retention were calculated from the combined date.

The results of the E3 Injection *in vivo*, Determination of the Percent retention of plasmid in *Salmonella* are shown below in Table 3.

Table 3

Tissue	CFU/ml	Tissue weight	CFU/gm	number positive for colicin	% positive in msbB PCR	% plasmid retention
41.29L	1.07E+03	1.33	4.02E+03	0/5	100%	n/a
41.29T	1.26e+07	0.26	2.42E+08	0/5	100%	n/a
41.29E3L	1.15E+04	2.34	2.46E+04	87/135	100%	64.44
41.29E3T	1.09e+06	0.35	1.56E+07	134/135	100%	99.26

In order for the colE3 plasmid to have an effect *in vivo*, and in order for it to carry other genes to the site of the tumor *in vivo,* the colE3 plasmid must be effectively retained *in vivo*. The results obtained in this experiment were surprising and also advantageous since the target of the effector is the tumor, and therefore there would be less effect on the liver itself.

17. EXAMPLE: TUMOR TARGETING OF VARIOUS 41.2.9. STRAINS IN THE M27 LUNG TUMOR MODEL

The following experiment demonstrates that the ability of 41.2.9 colE3 and 41.2.9 colE3 BRP and 41.2.9 colE3 BRP-m (modified BRP) *Salmonella* strains to target tumors.

The *Salmonella* strains listed in Table 4 below were injected into M27 lung tumor-bearing animals and animals were sacrificed on Day 7. Organ weights were assayed the next day for calculation of cfu/g.. Tumors and livers were homogenized and plated on msbB to determine the colony forming units (c.f.u.). In groups 1, 2, 4, and 6, the strains all accumulated in the tumors to approximately $4x10^8$ cfu/g with varying accumulation in the livers ranging from $6x10^4$ to $4x10^6$ cfu/g. Table 4 summarizes the data for all groups and is represented by the average cfu/g. All strains were found to have good tumor accumulation (better than 10^8 c.f.u./gram tissue) and all strains gave positive tumor to liver ratios. The BRP colE3 had the best ratio, but was not necessarily better than all other strains available. The E3 and E3BRP strains accumulate to fairly high levels in tumors with tumor to liver ratios between 100-200:1.

Table 4

Group	Strain	Tumor (T) Liver (L)	cfu/g tissue	Ratio (Tumor:Liver)
1	41.2.9/E3	T	$5.1\pm1.1x10^8$	131:1
1	41.2.9/E3	L	$3.9\pm3.6x10^6$	
2	41.2.9/E3BRP	T	$4.6\pm2.7x10^8$	209:1
2	41.2.9/E3BRP	L	$2.2\pm1.3x10^6$	
6[1]	$41.2.9/E3BRP_m$	T	$3.5\pm0.15x10^8$	90:1
6[1]	$41.2.9/E3BRP_m$	L	$3.9\pm3.6x10^6$	

[1] BRP_m refers to a modified BRP that contains point mutations at position 96 (G to an A resulting in an amino acid change of a glycine to an arginine) and at position 114 (T to an A resulting in an amino acid change of a serine to a threonine). The mutant BRPm no longer causes quasi lysis but is still able to secrete proteins from the bacteria (van der Wal, F., Koningstein, G., Ten Hagen, C.M., Oudega, B. and Luirink, J. (1998) Optimization of Bacteriocin Release Protein (BRP)-Mediated Protein Release by *Escherichia coli*: Random Mutagenesis of the pCloDF13-Derived BRP Gene to Uncouple Lethality and Quasi-Lysis from Protein Release. Applied and Environmental Microbiology vol. 64 pp 392-398).

18. EXAMPLE: EFFICACY OF 41.2.9/COLE3 ON C38 MURINE COLON CARCINOMA

The following example demonstrates the ability of 41.2.9/ColE3 to inhibit the growth of C38 murine colon carcinoma.

Colon 38 tumor fragment (2x2x2 mm^3) was implanted in C57BL/6 mice (female, Age: 9 weeks) subcutaneously. After tumor volume reached to 1,000 mm^3, the tumors were removed from the mice under sterile condition and cut into small fragments (about 2x2x2 mm^3 mm^3/fragment), and repeated above procedure for 5 cycles. The fragments were implanted into mice subcutaneously at the right flank by using a tumor implantation needle on Day 0 of tumor implants.

Animals were randomized on Day 0 of *Salmonella* administration when tumor volume reached 150-200 mm^3. Frozen stocks of 41.2.9 and 41.2.9/ColE3 were thawed at room temperature, and diluted in PBS to a final concentration of 7.5×10^6 cfu/ml, respectively. Aliquots of 0.2 ml bacterial suspension ($1.5x10^6$ CFU/mouse) were administered intravenously into mice as group indicated on Day 0. The bacteria suspension were diluted to $1x10^3$ CFU, plated on msbB plates and incubated overnight to determine the number of bacterial cfu which were administered. The tumors were measured twice per week up to the end of the experiment. Three tumors of each group

(ColE3) were dissected and processed for determining cfu and retention of plasmid.

Groups:

		Mice
1.	Untreated control	8
2.	41.2.9 ($1.5x10^6$/mouse)	8
3.	41.2.9/ColE3 ($1.5x10^6$/mouse)	8

The results for the efficacy of 41.2.9/ColE3 on C38 murine colon carcinoma are shown in FIG. 26. The data demonstrate that mice treated by intravenous injection with VNP20009 (41.2.9) are able to significantly inhibit the growth of C38 murine colon carcinoma. In addition, when mice were treated with VNP20009 containing the ColE3 plasmid, tumor regression (*i.e.*, tumors were smaller at the end of the experiment than at the beginning) was achieved.

19. EXAMPLE: ANTI-TUMOR ACTIVITY OF VNP20009/COLE3 ON DLD1 HUMAN COLON CARCINOMA IN NUDE MICE

The following example demonstrates the enhanced ability of *Salmonella* mutant VNP20009/ColE3 (41.2.9/ColE3) to inhibit the growth of DLD1 human colon carcinoma relative to *Salmonella* mutant 41.2.9.

DLD1 cells grown in log phase were removed by trypsinization, washed with PBS, and reconstituted to $5x10^7$ cell/ml PBS. Single cell suspensions (0.1 ml) were injected into Nude mice (Nu/Nu-CD1 female, Age: 9 weeks; from Charles River) subcutaneously on Day 0 (5×10^6 cells/mouse) at right flank. Ten animals were used in each group, randomized and staged at about 10-15 days after tumor implantation, when tumor size reached 300-400mm^3. CFU of *Salmonella* mutant 41.2.9 and 41.2.9/ColE3 were counted one day ahead. Bacteria (41.2.9 and 41.2.9/ColE3) were diluted to $1x10^7$ CFU/ml. Aliquots of 0.2 ml bacterial suspensions ($2x10^6$ CFU/mouse) were injected intraveneously into mice on days indicated. The bacteria suspension was diluted to $1x10^3$ CFU, plated each solutions 100ul on msbB plates and the plates incubated overnight. The bacteria colonies were counted next day. The tumors were measured twice per week.

Groups:

		Mice
1.	Untreated control (PBS)	10
2.	41.2.9 ($2x10^6$/mouse)	10
3.	41.2.9/ColE3 ($2x10^6$/mouse)	10

The results of the anti-tumor activity of 41.2.9/ColE3 on DLD1 human colon carcinoma in nude mice are shown in FIG. 27. The colicin E3-containing 41.2.9 strain

shows enhanced activity as compared to strain 41.2.9 alone.

20. EXAMPLE: EFFICACY OF 41.2.9/COLE3 ON B16 MURINE MELANOMA IN C57BL/6 MICE

The following example demonstrates the ability of *Salmonella* mutant 41.2.9/ColE3 to inhibit the growth B16-F10 melanoma.

B16-F10 cells grown in log phase were removed by trypsinization, washed with PBS, and reconstituted to 5 $x10^6$ cell/ml PBS. Single cell suspensions (0.1 ml) were injected into C57BL/6 mice (female, Age: 9 weeks) subcutaneously on Day 0 (5 $x10^5$ cells/mouse) at right flank. Ten animals were used in each group, and randomized at day 9, when tumor volume reached 150-200 mm^3. Frozen stocks of *Salmonella* clones 41.2.9 and 41.2.9/ColE3 were thawed at room temperature, and diluted in PBS to a final concentration of 7.5 x 10^6 cfu/ml, respectively. Aliquots of 0.2 ml bacterial suspension (1.5$x10^6$ CFU/mouse) were administered intravenously into mice as group indicated on Day 9. The bacteria suspension were diluted to 1$x10^3$ CFU, plated on msbB plates and incubated overnight to determine the number of bacterial cfu which were administered. The tumors were measured twice per week up to the end of the experiment.

Groups:

		Mice
1.	Untreated control	10
3.	41.2.9 (1.5$x10^6$/mouse)	10
5.	41.2.9/ColE3 (1.5$x10^6$/mouse)	10

The results of the efficacy of 41.2.9/ColE3 on B16 murine melanoma in C57BL/6 mice are shown in FIG. 28. The data demonstrate that mice treated by intravenous injection with 41.2.9 (41.2.9) are able to significantly inhibit the growth of B16 murine melanoma. In addition, mice treated with 41.2.9/ColE3 showed a significant decrease in tumor size at early time points (up to day 37) compared to 41.2.9 alone. This finding is very important because smaller tumor sizes are more readily susceptible to other therapeutics (*e.g.*, chemotherapeutic agents and radiation such as x-rays).

21. EXAMPLE: ANTI-TUMOR EFFICACY OF 41.2.9/E3 COMBINED WITH BRP

The following example demonstrates that the coexpression of BRP and E3 in *Salmonella* mutant 41.2.9 increases the anti-tumor efficacy of mutant.

The coexpression of BRP and E3 in *Salmonella* mutant 41.2.9 increases the amount of E3 secreted from the bacteria *in vitro*. If BRP was able to increase the amount of E3 secreted from the *Salmonella in vivo* then it could be hypothesized that this

additional extracellular E3 would be readily available to the tumor cells and thus increase the cytotoxicity to these cells. In this experiment 4 groups of animals (10 animals per group) were tested:

Group number	Treatment
1	Control (no treatment)
2	41.2.9
3	41.2.9/E3
4	41.2.9/E3/BRP

The model used in this experiment was the human lung carcinoma line HTB177. The cells were implanted into the flank of mice subcutaneously on day 1. When the tumors reached to approximately $500mm^3$, on day 14 the animals were injected by intravenous injection with $1x10^6$ cfu of the strain described in the above table, or with saline in the case of group 1. The tumor volume was measured weekly up to day 24. The results in Table 5 show that while 41.2.9 by itself is able to inhibit tumor growth (40% inhibition), the combination with E3 is able to increase the anti-tumor efficacy (63%). However, when the strain carrying both E3 and BRP is used in this model, the anti-tumor efficacy is further enhanced (67% inhibition compared to untreated control) and the enhanced inhibition is quite significant at the earlier time points (Table 5).

Table 5: Percent Tumor Growth Inhibition Compared to Untreated Control

Strain	Day 17	Day 20	Day 24
41.2.9	50	38	40
41.2.9/E3	63	58	63
41.2.9/E3/BRP	97	82	67

In conclusion, treatment with *Salmonella* carrying both the cytotoxic colicin E3 and the enhanced secretion system BRP results in an increase in anti-tumor efficacy compared to the untreated control and to treatment with 41.2.9/E3 alone.

22. EXAMPLE: COMBINATION OF COLICIN E3-CONTAINING SALMONELLA WITH X-RAY TREATMENT

The following example demonstrates that the combination of 41.2.9 with two doses of X-ray significantly increases the survival time of mice above that seen for X-ray alone.

The schedule was as follows: At day 0, tumors were implanted by the administration of B16F10 melanoma (5×10^5 cells/mouse) s.c. in the right side, at mid body of 100 C57B6 female mice (5-7 wks of age). At day 8, colicin E3-containing *Salmonella* 41.2.9 was injected and at days 12, and 26, x-rays were administered.

The results of the combination of colicin E3-containing *Salmonella* with x-ray treatment are shown in Table 6.

Table 6

Category	n=( )	Days to 1g	mean	T/C
A sham 15Gy	(6)	12, 12, 18, 18, 18, 21	17	1.0
J 15Gy x-rays 12dpt, 26dpt	(9)	14, 14, 18, 21, 25, 35, 35, 67, 67	33	1.9
K 41.2.9 +15Gy x-rays12dpt, 26dpt regression #1,2	(9)	21, 28, 35, 35, 56, 60, 60, 60, 67	47	2.8
L 41.2.9/E3+15Gy x-rays 12dpt, 26dpt regression d32	(9)	28, 39, 53, 56, 56, 60, 67, 74, 78	57	3.3

This data demonstrates that the combination of 41.2.9 with two doses of X-ray significantly increases the survival time of mice above that seen for X-ray alone. E3 further increased the survival time of mice above that seen for 41.2.9 plus X-ray.

23. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF CYTOTOXIC NECROTIC FACTORS BY TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA

The following example demonstrates that the expression of *E. coli* cytotoxic necrotic factor 1 (CNF1) by tumor-targeted bacteria.

Cytotoxic necrotic factors include, but are not limited to, *E. coli* cytotoxic necrotic factor 1 (CNF1; Falbo *et al.*, 1993, Infect. Immun. 61:4904-4914), *Vibrio fischeri* CNF1 (Lin *et al.*, 1998, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm. 250:462-465) and *E. coli* cytotoxic necrotic factor 2 (CNF2; Sugai *et al.*, 1999, Infect. Immun. 67:6550-6557). The CNF-family also includes *Pasteurella multiocida* toxin (PMT) which shares 27% identical residues and 80% conserved residues of the n-terminal portion of CNF2 (Oswald *et al.*, 1994, Proc. Acad, Sci. USA 91:3814-3818).

CNF1 was cloned from *E. coli* J96 (ATCC 700336) by PCR using the primers (forward) 5'- GTGTCATGAAAATGGGTAACCAATGGCAAC -3' (SEQ ID NO:35) and (reverse) 5'- CACAGAGCTCGCGCTAACAAAACAGCACAAGGGAG -3' (SEQ ID NO:36) using standard PCR. An approximately 3100 bp product was obtained and cloned into the NcoI and SacI sites of pTrc99a for expression of the protein as well as DNA sequencing using *E. coli* as the DNA cloning host. DNA sequencing was performed by standard methods at the Yale University Keck Biotechnology laboratory. The DNA

sequencing confirmed that the cloned PCR product was CNF1 with only minor sequence variation of 6 of 3065 base pairs.

The CNF1 plasmid was electroporated into an *E. coli* DNA cloning host DH5α and *Salmonella* strain YS1646 (International Publication No. WO 99/13053). The expression of CNF1 was determined in the *E. coli* DNA cloning host and *Salmonella* strain YS1649 using a standard LDH assay (Promega, Madison, WI, Cytotox 96®). FIG. 29 shows that the presence of the CNF-containing plasmid results in enhanced cytotoxicity. A subsequent assay was used to show that *Salmonella* carrying the CNF-containing plasmid also exhibit other known properties of CNF1 such as multinucleation (Rycke et al., 1990, J. Clin. Microbiol. 28: 694-699). Hela cells exposed to CNF1 were examined for nuclei by light microscopy. The results in FIG. 30 clearly show that the presence of CNF1 in *Salmonella* results in the expected multinucleation and cell enlargement.

24. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF VEROTOXIN BY TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA

The following example demonstrates the cytotoxicity of verotoxin AB produced by tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express verotoxin AB.

Verotoxin (syn. HSC10 toxin, Shiga toxin, shiga-like toxin, *Shigella* toxin). This toxin was isolated from a colicin-producing *E. coli* strain HSC10, and was originally thought to be a colicin (Farkas-Himsley *et al.*, 1995, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 92(15):6996-7000) . It has a long history of antitumor activity, especially for ovarian cancer and brain tumors, however, the antitumor activity is associated with purified preparations, not with whole live bacteria.

Verotoxin was cloned from *E. coli* HSC10 (ATCC 55227) using primers based upon the published sequence for verotoxin I and confirmed by DNA-sequencing at the Yale Keck Biotechnology Center using standard DNA sequencing techniques. The expression of verotoxin was accomplished using the BRP gene under control of the tetracyclin-inducible promoter polycistronic with the verotoxin A and B subunits. This tetracyclin-inducible BRP verotoxin AB was cloned into a vector for chromosomal integration using the msbB gene.

24.1. CONSTRUCTION OF VECTORS

24.1.1. AMPLIFICATION AND CLONING OF AB

Verotoxin AB (AB) was generated by PCR using the following primers:

H19B-7: forward: 5'-GTGTCCATGGCTAAAACATTATTAATAGCTGCATCGC-3' (SEQ ID NO:37); and

QSTX-R1: reverse 5'-GTGTCTGCAGAACTGACTGAATTGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO:38).

These primers also contain outer NcoI(5') and PstI(3') restriction endonuclease sites for cloning into the NcoI and PstI sites of ptrc99A.

24.1.2. AMPLIFICATION AND CLONING OF TETBRP

TetBRP-AB was constructed in the intermediate vector pSP72-F6/R6. TetBRP was generated by PCR using the following primers: Tet-5': forward 5'-GTGTAGATCTTTAAGACCCACTTTCACATTTAAGTTG-3' (SEQ ID NO:39) and BRP-TET-3': reverse 5'-CACAGGATCCTTACTGAACCGCGATCCCCG-3' (SEQ ID NO:40). These primers contain BglII(5') and BamHI(3') restriction endonuclease sites for cloning into BglII and BamHI sites of pSP72-F6/R6 vector.

24.1.3. SUBCLONING OF AB INTO pSP72-F6/R6-TETBRP

ptrc99A-AB was digested with BamHI and AvaI restriction endonucleases to remove AB for insertion into pSP72F6/R6-TetBRP, also digested with BamHI and AvaI restriction endonucleases. The pSP72F6/R6 vector contains multiple restriction endonuclease sites for cloning in addition to a portion of the β-gal gene for lacZ-alpha complementation in trans. Both the vector (pSP72F6/R6-TetBRP) and the AB insert were resolved on a 0.8% 1XTAE agarose gel and purified using the Qiagen gel extraction kit. The vector and insert were ligated using T4 ligase and transformed into DH5a *E. coli* cells using the heat shock method. The cells were plated to LB plates containing 100 μg/ml Amp and 40 μg/ml X-gal . Positive colonies were selected based on ampicillin resistance and the presence of a functional β-gal gene (positive colonies were blue).

24.1.4. SUBCLONING OF TETBRP-AB INTO pCDV442

pSP72F6/R6-TetBRP-AB was digested with NotI and SfiI restriction endonucleases for subcloning into the pCVD442 vector, also digested with NotI and SfiI restriction endonucleases.

24.1.5. *msbB* CHROMOSOMAL VECTOR

A vector capable of undergoing homologous recombination with the D*msbB* gene in the chromosome of strain VNP20009 (a.k.a. YS1646 in International Publication No. WO 99/13053) was constructed in the suicide vector pCVD442 (Donnenberg and Kaper, 1991, Infection and Immunity 59: 4310-4317). Primers for PCR were designed that would generate portions of the 5' and 3' sections of the *msbB* deletion occurring in VNP20009 as two separate products (*msbB*-5': forward 5'-GTG TGA GCT CGA TCA ACC AGC AAG

CCG TTA ACC CTC TGA C-3' (SEQ ID NO:41) and reverse 5' GTG TGC ATG CGG GGG GCC ATA TAG GCC GGG GAT TTA AAT GCA AAC GTC CGC CGA AAC GCC GAC GCA C-3' (SEQ ID NO:42); and *msbB*-3':forward 5'-GTG TGC ATG CGG GGT TAA TTA AGG GGG CGG CCG CGT GGT ATT GGT TGA ACC GAC GGT GCT CAT GAC ATC GC-3' (SEQ ID NO:43) and reverse 5'-GTG TCT CGA GGA TAT CAT TCT GGC CTC TGA CGT TGT G-3' (SEQ ID NO:44). These primers also contain outer *Sac*I (5') and *Ava*I (3') restriction endonuclease sites to facilitate cloning into the *Sac*I and *Sal*I sites of pCVD442 when these two fragments are joined via a common *Sph*I site and generate internal *Not*1, *Pac*I, *Sph*I, *Sfi*I, *Swa*I and *Dra*I, in order to facilitate cloning of DNA fragments into the D*msbB* for stable chromosomal integration without antibiotic resistance (FIG. 31). This vector is referred to as pCVD442-*msbB* (see FIGS. 32 and 33).

In order to clone the *Tet-BRP-AB* into the pCVD442- *msbB*, the *Tet-BRP-AB* plasmid DNA was restriction digested and the appropriate DNA was purified and a ligation reaction containing these two components was performed using T4 ligase. The ligation reaction was then transformed to DH5 l pir and colonies screened for the presence and orientation of the *Tet-BRP-AB*. The *Tet-BRP-AB* clone was transformed into the strain SM10 l pir (Donnenberg and Kaper, 1991, *supra*) and the plasmid designated pCVD442-*Tet-BRP-AB*. Colonies of SM10 l pir were screened for *Tet-BRP-AB* gene by PCR, and a SM10 l pir clone pCVD442- *Tet-BRP-AB* was chosen for use as a mating donor to *Salmonella* strains. SM10 l pir containing the pCVD442- *Tet-BRP-AB* was mated to a *Salmonella* strain YS50101 (a spontaneous derivative of the tetracycline-resistant strain YS82 (Low *et al.*, 1999, *supra*) with enhanced resistance to Difco MacConkey agar) by standard methods (Davis, R. W., Botstein, D., and Roth, J. R. 1980. Advanced Bacterial Genetics, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor) and selected for on plates containing 50 μg/mL carbenicillin (carb) and 300 μg/mL streptomycin (strep). The resulting YS50102- pCVD442- *Tet-BRP-AB* clones were checked for pCVD442- *Tet-BRP-AB* gene by PCR.

24.2. TRANSFER OF THE CHROMOSOMALLY INTEGRATED pCVD442-Tet-BRP-AB INTO 41.2.9 (YS1646) TO GENERATE THE STRAIN 41.2.9-Tet-BRP-AB

Using bacteriophage P22 (mutant HT105/1 int-201; Davis et al., 1980), 41.2.9 was transduced to carbenicillin resistance using strain YS50102- Tet-BRP-AB as donor. The presence of the *bla* and *sacB* genes from pCVD442 allowed the selection of a carb^r (or amp^r) suc^s strain denoted 41.2.9- pCVD-Tet-BRP-AB-1 which contained both the D*msbB* and D*msbB*- Tet-BRP-AB genes (FIG. 33, #3). Strain 41.2.9- Tet-BRP-AB -1 was plated on LB sucrose to select a suc^r carb^s derivative to remove the D*msbB* gene and leave the D*msbB*- Tet-BRP-AB gene according to the methods of Donnenberg and Kaper, 1991,

supra (FIG. 33, #4) except that the LB-sucrose agar plates were made without NaCl, and the plates were incubated at 30°C. After the growth of colonies on these plates, they were gridded to an msbB plate and replica plated to either carbenicillin- or sucrose-containing plates in order to detect the presence of a clone which lacked both the antibiotic and sucrase markers. The resulting clones were checked for the presence of the Tet-BRP-AB gene by PCR. One such derivative containing the chromosomally integrated Tet-BRP-AB and lacking sucrose sensitivity and carbenicillin resistance was denoted as 41.2.9-Tet-BRP-verotoxin AB.

41.2.9-Tet-BRP-verotoxin AB was tested for cytotoxicity *in vitro* using a standard LDH cytotoxicity assay (Cytotox^{96}®; Promega, Madison, Wisconsin). The results are shown in FIG. 34, demonstrating the toxic properties of verotoxin-expressing clones 26 and 31. Clones 26 and 31 had a significantly higher percentage of cytotoxity when treated with tetracycline than when not treated with tetracycline.

25. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF HEMOLYSIN BY TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA

The following example demonstrates that tumor-targeted bacteria can be engineered to express hemolytic proteins such as hemolysin constitutively or under inducible control.

Hemolysins are well known cytotoxic proteins which have the ability to lyse red blood cells (see, *e.g.*, Beutin, 1991, Med. Microbiol. Immunol 180:167-182). *SheA* (Genbank Number ECO238954) is a silent hemolysin found in most wild type *E.coli* which is not normally expressed (Fernandez *et al.*, 1998, FEMS Micriobiol Lett 168:85-90). *SheA* (a.k.a. *hlyE*; Genbank Number U57430) was cloned by PCR using the following primers (forward) 5'-TTTTTTCCAT GGCTATTATG ACTGAAATCG TTGCAGATAA AACGG-3' (SEQ ID NO:45) and (reverse) 5'-TTTTTTAAGC TTCCCGGGTC AGACTTCAGG TACCTCAAAG AGTGTC-3' (SEQ ID NO:46) from wild type *E. coli* (strain 2507, Yale University *E. coli* Genetic Stock Center) under standard PCR conditions. The PCR product of the correct size was cloned into the *Nco*I and *Hind*III sites of ptrc99a (Pharmacia) in order to place it under the partially constitutive trc promoter. The PCR product was also cloned into the tet-bgal-Z-term vector (described *supra*) cut with *Nco*I and *Eco*RV. *E. coli* DH5a (Gibco) were then transformed with the plasmids and plated to blood agar (trypic soy agar with 5% sheep blood; BioMerieux, Lombard, IL) with and without the addition of 0.2 ug/ml tetracycline. Positive colonies were picked as those containing halos of clearing around the colony which indicates hemolysis. Positive colonies were subjected to standard plasmid purification and transformed to *Salmonella* YS501 and re-screened for halos.

Constitutive halo formation is shown in FIG. 35 (2A and 2B) for the trc99a construct, where a halo is observed with or without added tetracycline. Tetracycline-

dependent halo formation is shown in FIG. 35 (3A and 3B) for the tetracycline-promoter driven *SheA*, where no halo is observed without the addition tetracycline. These results demonstrate that a tumor-targeted bacterium can express a hemolytic protein, either constitutively or under inducible control.

26. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF METHIONASE BY TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA

The following example demonstrates that attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria such as *Salmonella* can be engineered to express methionase.

Methionase is an enzyme that degrades methionine, an essential ammino acid necessary for tumor growth. Methods have been described for administration of purified methionase to inhibit tumor growth or to administer a DNA or viral vector which codes for methionase (International Publication No. WO00/29589 by Xu and Tan). Xu and Tan did not disclose methods for using tumor-specific bacterial vectors for delivery of methionase, and, in order to achieve efficacy with purified protein, large amounts of methionase are required. A novel method for delivering methionase directly to the tumors it to express the enzyme using tumor-targeted bacteria.

The following primers were generated for methionase from *Pneudomas putida* based upon Genbank No. L43133:

Forward: METH-XHOI
5'-CCGCTCGAGATGCACGGCTCCAACAAGCTCCCA-3' (SEQ ID NO:47); and

Reverse: METH-BAM
5'-CGCGGATCCTTAGGCACTCGCCTTGAGTGCCTG-3' (SEQ ID NO:48)

Using the above listed primers (4 mM) and an isolated colony of *Pneudomas putida* as the template, the sequence of methionase was amplified by PCR under the following conditions:
one cycle of 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 35 cycles of: 94°C for 1 minute, 60°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes. A final amplification step of 72°C for 10 minutes was included as the last step of the PCR reaction. PCR products were resolved on 0.8% 1X TAE agarose gel and a PCR product of the expected size for methionase (~ 1196 bp) was identified. The band was excised from the gel and purified using the Qiagen gel extraction kit.

Both the pSP72 vector and the isolated gel purifed methionase gene obtained above were digested with the restriction enzymes Xho I and Bam HI. The digested vector and methionase were resolved on a 0.8% 1XTAE agarose gel. The products of the digestion

corresponding to the linearized vector and digested methionase gene were excised from the gel and purified using the Qiagen gel extraction kit. The linearized vector and the insert (methionase) were ligated together using T4 ligase. The ligation mixture was transformed into Dh5a *E.coli* cells by a heat shock method. After recovery, the cells were plated to LB media containing 100 mg/mL of ampicillan (Amp) to select for those cells that contain the intact pSP72 vector. Amp resistant colonies were identified and the presence of the pSP72 vector containing the methionase gene were confirmed by plasmid preparation using a Qiagen mini-prep kit and restriction digest with the enzymes Eco RI and Bsp HI. Clone #9, was sent for sequencing to the Yale sequencing Facility, Yale University School of Medicine. Sequence was done using both the SP6 (forward) and T7 (reverse) sequencing primers. Results demonstrate 100% sequence match to published methionase sequence with the exception of the TGA stop codon which was changed to TAA by PCR.

Methionase activity can be determined using the methionase assay described in Hori *et al.*, 1996, Cancer Research 56:2116-2122

27. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF APOPTIN PROTEIN AS A TAT FUSIONS IN ATTENUATED TUMOR-TARGETED BACTERIA

The following example demonstrates that attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria can be engineered to express and secrete fusion proteins comprising an effector molecule and a ferry peptide such as TAT, antennapedia, VP22, and Kaposi FGF MTS.

27.1. CONSTRUCTION OF TAT-APOPTIN VECTORS

The canary virus (CAV) protein apoptin is known to induce apoptosis in neoplastic cells, as when delivered by adenoviral vectors (see, *e.g.*, Noteborn et al., 1999, Gene Therapy 6:882-892).

In order to generate a protein which could be transcribed in the cytoplasm of *Salmonella* and yet have the ability to be transported to the nucleus of a tumor cell and cause apoptosis, the apoptin protein was fused to a peptide derived from the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) TAT protein (see, *e.g.*, Schwartze et al., 1999, Science 285:1569-1572). Since TAT protein fusions have also been shown to be functional when fused to poly-histadine (hexahistadine) amino acids which both increase the positive charge and facilitate protein purification (Schwartze *et al.*, 1999, *supra*), the TAT-apoptin fusion was generated with and without the hexahistadine (FIG. 36 A and B). Further, the TAT-apoptin fusion can be generated with and without an OmpA-8L signal sequence (FIG. 36A and C).

The apoptin and hexahistadine apoptin are assembled using overlapping oligonucleotides. The nucleic acid sequence encoding apoptin was generated by PCR using the following oligonucleotides:

TAP1: 5'- GATCCCATGG CTTATGGCAG AAAAAAACGC CGTCAGCGCC GTCGCATGAA CGCGCTGCAG GAAGATACCC CGCCGGGCCC GTCCACCGTG TTTCGCCCGC CG-3' (SEQ ID NO:49)

TAP2: 5'- GGGACAGGGT GATGGTGATG CCCGCGATGC CGATGCGGAT TTCGCGGCAA TGCGGGGTTT CCAGCGGGCG GGAGGAGGTC GGCGGGCGAA ACACGGTGGA CGG-3'(SEQ ID NO:50)

TAP3: 5'- GGCATCGCGG GCATCACCAT CACCCTGTCC CTGTGCGGCT GCGCGAACGC GCGCGCGCCG ACCCTGCGCT CCGCGACCGC GGATAACTCC GAAAACACCG GC-3'(SEQ ID NO:51)

TAP4: 5'-GCGATATTCG GACGGATCGC AGGAGCGTTT TTTGGACGGC GGTTTCGGCT GATCGGTGCG CAGATCCGGG ACGTTTTTAA AGCCGGTGTT TTCGGAGTTA TCCGCGGTCG C-3' (SEQ ID NO:52)

TAP5: 5'-CCTGCGATCC GTCCGAATAT CGCGTCTCCG AACTGAAAGA ATCCCTGATC ACCACCACCC CGTCCCGCCC GCGCACCGCC CGCCGCTGCA TCCGCCTCTG AAAGCTTCAT G-3' (SEQ ID NO:53)

TAP6: 5'-CATGAAGCTT TCAGAGGCGG ATGCAGCGGC GGGCGGTGCG C-3' (SEQ ID NO:54)

The nucleic acid sequence encoding the hexahistadine-containing version of the TAT-apoptin fusion protein was generated using TAP 2-TAP6 oligonucleotides and TAP6H1 oligonucleotide (5'-GATCCCATGG CTCATCACCA TCACCACCAT TATGGCCGCA AAAAACGCCG TCAGCGCCGT CGCATGAACG CGCTGCAGGA AGATACCCCG CCGGGCCC-3'; SEQ ID NO:55). The nucleic acid sequence encoding the OmpA8L-containing version of the TAT-apoptin fusion protein is generated from the PCR product of TAP1-TAP6 oligonucleotides by PCR using TAP6 oligonucleotide and omp8LF1 oligonucleotide (5'- GATCCCATGG CTAAAAAGAC GGCTCTGGCG CTTCTGCTCT TGCTGTTAGC GCTGACTAGT GTAGCGCAGG CCTATGGCCG CAAAAAACGC CGTCAGCGCC -3'; SEQ ID NO:56).

Each oligonucleotide is formulated into a stock solution which is 4 μM in concentration. Using premixed PCR reaction beads (Pharmacia, Ready-to-go beads), 2 μl of each oligonucleotide was used. The PCR reaction consisted of one cycle at 95° for 5 minutes; thirty-five cycles at 95°C for 1 minute, 60 °C for 1 minute, 72°C for 1 minute; and one cycle at 72°C for 10 minutes. The PCR reaction was then extracted with

phenol/chloroform, precipitated with ethanol, redissolved in water and subjected to restriction digestion with Nco I and Hind III. The restriction-digested PCR product was resolved by gel electrophoresis and the product of the correct size (approximately 420 and 450 bp for TAT-apoptin and hexahistadine-TAT-apoptin, respectively) were excised from the gel and isolated using standard molecular biology techniques. These products are ligated into Nco I and Hind III digested ptrc99a (Pharmacia) and result in the ptrc99a-TAT-apoptin construct. The correct DNA sequence was obtained for both the TAT-apoptin (FIG. 37) and the hexahistadine TAT-apoptin (FIG 38).

27.2. DEMONSTRATION OF SECRETION AND UPTAKE OF TAT-APOPTIN

Attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria are transformed with the ptrc99a-TAT-apoptin construct by standard techniques known in the art (*e.g.*, by heat shock or electroporation) and cultured in medium. The supernatant from the bacterial culture is tested for the presence of TAT-apoptin using techniques known to those of skill in the art (*e.g.*, Western Blot analysis or ELISA). Once the presence of the TAT-apoptin in the supernatant of the bacterial culture is confirmed, the bacterial culture supernatant is incubated with mammalian cells (*e.g.*, NIH3T3, CHO, 293, and 293T cells) and the presence of the TAT-apoptin inside the cells is confirmed by apoptin assays known to those of skill in the art.

27.3. DEMONSTRATION THE UPTAKE OF TAT-APOPTIN INTRATUMORALLY

Attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria engineered to express TAT-apoptin or apoptin are administered intravenously to a B16 tumor model. The mice are sacrificed several days after administration of the bacteria and the organ weights are determined. Tumors are assayed for the presence and localization of TAT-aproptin or apoptin using apoptosis assays (*e.g.*, DNA laddering and Fluorescein In Situ Cell Death Detection Kit (Boehringer Mannheim, Mannheim, Germany)) known to those of skill in the art. Further, the size of the tumors are assayed to determine anti-tumor activity of the TAT-apoptin. Tumors are also homogenized and plated to determine the colony forming units (c.f.u.).

28. EXAMPLE: EFFICACY OF THE COMBINATION OF VNP20009 AND CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENTS ON THE GROWTH OF M27 LUNG CARCINOMA IN MICE

The following example demonstrates that the administration of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent may act synergistically or additively to inhibit the growth of solid tumors such as lung carcinoma.

28.1. EFFICACY OF THE COMBINATION OF VNP20009 AND CYTOXAN OR VNP20009 AND MITOMYCIN C ON THE GROWTH OF M27 LUNG CARCINOMA IN MICE

Liquid nitrogen stored M27 murine lung carcinoma cells ($1x10^6$/ml x 1ml) were recovered by rapidly thawing the cells at 37°C and cultured with 10 ml of DMEM culture medium containing 10% fetal calf serum (FCS) at 37°C, 5% CO_2. After passing the cells for two generations, M27 cells in log phase were removed by trypsinization, washed with 1 x PBS, and reconstituted to $2.5x10^6$ cells/ml with 1 x PBS for tumor implantation. An M27 cell suspension was implanted into 100 C57BL/6 mice (female, aged 8 weeks, 20 g; 5×10^5 cells/mouse) subcutaneously at the right flank on Day 0. The mice were randomly divided into ten groups with each group consisting of 10 mice.

Salmonella strain VNP20009 was diluted to $5x10^6$ CFU/ml with 1 x PBS with our standard dilution procedures. Each mouse was intravenously administered 0.2 ml of diluted *Salmonella* ($1x10^6$ CFU/mouse) on day 12 according to Table 6, *infra*. In order to determine the actual number of injected bacteria, the $5x10^6$ CFU/ml bacterial suspensions were further diluted to $1x10^3$ CFU/ml and plated on nutrient agar (MsbB plates; International Publication No. WO 99/13053). The colonies formed were counted the next day.

The mitomycin C (Sigma) and cytoxan (Sigma) were administered to mice according to Table 7, *infra*. The second dose of mitomcyin C was given to the combination groups on day 22 but not those treated with mitomycin C only due to the large size of the tumor. 200 mpk of Cipro (Bayer Inc., West Haven, CT) was administered to each mouse treated with VNP20009 alone or VNP20009 + chemotherapeutic drugs since severe toxic reactions were observed in groups treated with VNP20009 + cytoxan. The tumor volume was measured twice a week until the end of the experiment. The behavior, appearance and mortality of the animals was observed daily. The mice were kept in a clean, temperature constant laboratory. The bedding was changed twice a week and the mice were provided with enough food and drinking water.

Table 7

Group	Number of Mice
No treatment control	10
3 mpk mitomycin C, i.v., day 15	10
5 mpk, mitomycin C, i.v., day 15	10
150 mpk cytoxan, i.p., day 15	10
200 mpk cytoxan, i.p., day 15	10
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., day 12	10

Group	Number of Mice
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., day 12 + 3 mpk mitomycin C, i.v., days 15 & 22	10
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., day 12 + 5 mpk mitomycin C, i.v., days 15 & 22	10
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., day 12 + 150 mpk cytoxan, i.p., day 15	10
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., day 12 + 200 mpk cytoxan, i.p., day 15	10

As shown to FIG. 39, the combination treatment with VNP20009 + cytoxan inhibited the growth of the M27 lung carcinoma more than VNP20009 treatment alone or cytoxan treatment alone. As shown in FIG. 40, the combination of VNP20009 + mitomycin C inhibited the growth of the M27 lung carcinoma more than mitomycin C alone. However, the combination of VNP20009 + mitomycin C did not inhibit the growth of the M27 lung carcinoma more than VNP20009 treatment alone (FIG. 40). These results suggest that the administration of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent may act synergistically or additively to inhibit the growth of solid tumors such as lung carcinoma.

28.2. EFFICACY OF THE COMBINATION OF VNP20009 AND CISPLATIN ON THE GROWTH OF M27 LUNG CARCINOMA IN MICE

Liquid nitrogen stored M27 murine lung carcinoma cells ($1x10^6$/ml x 1ml) were recovered by rapidly thawing the cells at 37°C and cultured with 25 ml of DMEM culture medium containing 10% fetal calf serum (FCS) at 37°C, 5% CO_2. After passing the cells for two generations, M27 cells in log phase (about 90-95% saturation) were removed by trypsinization, washed with 1 x PBS, and reconstituted to $2.5x10^6$ cells/ml with 1 x PBS for tumor implantation. An M27 cell suspension (0.2 ml) was implanted into 36 C57BL/6 mice (female, aged 8 weeks, 20 g; $5x10^5$ cells/mouse) subcutaneously at the right flank on day 0. The mice were randomly divided into groups with each group consisting of 9 mice.

Salmonella strains VNP20009 was diluted to $5x10^6$ CFU/ml with 1 x PBS with our standard dilution procedures. Each mouse was administered via the tail vein 0.2 ml of *Salmonella* ($1x10^6$ CFU/mouse) on day 12 according to Table 8, *infra*. In order to determine the actual number of injected bacteria, the $5x10^6$ CFU/ml bacterial suspensions were further diluted to $1x10^3$ CFU/ml and plated on MsBb plates. The colonies formed were counted the next day.

The cisplatin was administered to mice on day 14, two days post bacterial injection (Table 8, *infra*). The cisplatin was diluted to 0.5 mg/ml with normal saline prior to administration. The tumor volume was measured twice a week until the end of the experiment. The behavior, appearance and mortality of the animals was observed daily. The mice were kept in a clean, temperature constant laboratory. The bedding was changed twice a week and the mice were provided with enough food and drinking water.

Table 8

Group	Number of Mice
Control (no treatment)	9
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., on day 12	9
5 mpk cisplatin, i.p. qw x 2, on day 14, 19	9
VNP20009, $1x10^6$/mouse i.v., on day 12 + 5 mpk cisplatin, i.p. qw x 2, on day 14, 19, 33	9

As shown in FIG. 41, the combination treatment with VNP20009 + cisplatin inhibited the growth of the M27 lung carcinoma more than VNP20009 treatment alone or cisplatin treatment alone. These results suggest that the administration of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria in combination with chemotherapeutic agent such as cisplatin may act synergistically or additively to inhibit the growth of solid tumors such as lung carcinoma.

The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the specific embodiments described herein. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and accompanying figures. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

Various publications are cited herein, the disclosures of which are incorporated by reference in their entireties.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. An attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

2. An attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

3. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a TNF family member.

4. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 3, wherein the TNF family member is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α- related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), CD40 ligand (CD40L), LT-α, LT-β, OX4OL, CD4OL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L, 4-1BBL, APRIL, LIGHT, TL1, TNFSF16, TNFSF17, or AITR-L.

5. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is an anti-angiogenic factor.

6. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 5, wherein the anti-angiogenic factor is endostatin, angiostatin, anti-angiogenic antithrombin III, the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin, a uPA receptor antagonist, the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin, the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic 24 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of thrombospondin I, the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, RGD and NGR containing peptides, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen and EGF, and peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$, or VEGF receptor.

7. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a bacteriocin family member with the proviso said bacteriocin is not BRP.

8. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 7, wherein the bacteriocin family member is ColE1, ColE1a, ColE1b ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, ColE9, Colicin A, Colicin K, Colicin L, Colicin M, cloacin DF13, pesticin A1122, staphylococcin 1580, butyricin 7423, pyocin R1 or AP41, megacin A-216, vibriocin, or microcin M15.

9. The attenuated tumor targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein the primary effector molecule is a tumor inhibitory enzyme.

10. The attenuated tumor targeted bacteria of claim 9, wherein the tumor inhibitory enzyme is methionase, asparaginase, lipase, phospholipase, protease, DNAase or glycosidase.

11. The attenuated tumor targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein the primary effector molecule is hemolysin, verotoxin, CNF1, CNF2, or PMT.

12. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein the primary effector molecule is derived from an animal, plant, bacteria, or virus.

13. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 2, wherein the secondary effector molecule is an immunomodulating agent, an anti-tumor protein, a pro-drug converting enzyme, an antisense molecule, a ribozyme, or an antigen.

14. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 1 or 2, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*.

15. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 1, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises an enhanced release system.

16. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 2, wherein the secondary effector molecule is a bacteriocin release factor (BRP).

17. An attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion protein comprises a signal sequence and an effector molecule.

18. An attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters,

wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion protein comprises a ferry peptide and an effector molecule.

19. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 18, wherein the fusion protein further comprises a signal sequence.

20. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 17 or 19, wherein the signal sequence is an OmpA-like protein.

21. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 18 or 19, wherein the ferry peptide is derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetraxin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), herpes simplex virus VP22, hexahistidine, hexalysine, or hexaarginine.

22. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 17, 18 or 19, wherein the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

23. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 17, 18 or 19, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters.

24. The attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria of claim 23, wherein the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

25. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

26. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

27. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a TNF family member.

28. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 27, wherein the TNF family member is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α- related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), CD40 ligand (CD40L), LT-α, LT-β, OX4OL, CD4OL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L, 4-1BBL, APRIL, LIGHT, TL1, TNFSF16, TNFSF17, or AITR-L.

29. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is an anti-angiogenic factor.

30. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 29, wherein the anti-angiogenic factor is endostatin, angiostatin, anti-angiogenic antithrombin III, the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin, a uPA receptor antagonist, the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin, the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic 24 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of Thrombospondin I, the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, RGD and NGR containing peptides, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen and EGF, and peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_V\beta_3$, or VEGF receptor.

31. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a bacteriocin family member with the proviso said bacteriocin is not BRP.

32. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 31, wherein the bacteriocin family member is ColE1, ColE1a, ColE1b ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, ColE9, Colicin A, Colicin K, Colicin L, Colicin M, cloacin DF13, pesticin A1122, staphylococcin 1580, butyricin 7423, pyocin R1 or AP41, megacin A-216, vibriocin or microcin M15.

33. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecule is a tumor inhibitory enzyme.

34. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 33, wherein the tumor inhibitory enzyme is methionase, asparaginase, lipase, phospholipase, protease, DNAase or glycosidase.

35. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecule is hemolysin, verotoxin, CNF1, CNF2, or PMT.

36. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein the primary effector molecule is derived from an animal, plant, bacteria, or virus.

37. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 26, wherein the secondary effector molecule is an immunomodulating agent, an anti-tumor protein, a pro-drug converting enzyme, an antisense molecule, a ribozyme, or an antigen.

38. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25 or 26, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*.

39. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 25, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises an enhanced release system.

40. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 26, wherein the secondary effector molecule is a bacteriocin release factor.

41. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion protein comprises a signal sequence and an effector molecule.

42. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion protein comprises a ferry peptide and an effector molecule.

43. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 42, wherein the fusion protein furhter comprises a signal sequence.

44. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 41 or 43, wherein the signal sequence is an OmpA-like protein.

45. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 42 or 43, wherein the ferry peptide is derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetraxin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), herpes simplex virus VP22, hexahistadine, hexalysine, or hexaarginine.

46. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 41, 42 or 43, wherein the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

47. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 41, 42 or 43, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters.

48. A method for delivering one or more primary effector molecules for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer to a subject in need of such treatment, comprising administering a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

49. A method for delivering one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer to a subject in need of such treatment, comprising administering a pharmaceutical composition a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

50. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a TNF family member.

51. The method of claim 50, wherein the TNF family member is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α- related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), CD40 ligand (CD40L), LT-α, LT-β, OX4OL, CD4OL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L, 4-1BBL, APRIL, LIGHT, TL1, TNFSF16, TNFSF17, or AITR-L.

52. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is an anti-angiogenic factor.

53. The method of claim 52, wherein the anti-angiogenic factor is endostatin, angiostatin, anti-angiogenic antithrombin III, the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin, a uPA receptor antagonist, the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin, the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-

angiogenic 24 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of thrombospondin I, the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, RGD and NGR containing peptides, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen and EGF, and peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_v\beta_3$, or VEGF receptor.

54. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is bacteriocin family member with the proviso said bacteriocin is not BRP.

55. The method of claim 54, wherein the bacteriocin family member is ColE1, ColE1a, ColE1b ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, ColE9, Colicin A, Colicin K, Colicin L, Colicin M, cloacin DF13, pesticin A1122, staphylococcin 1580, butyricin 7423, pyocin R1 or AP41, megacin A-216, vibriocin or microcin M15.

56. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a tumor inhibitory enzyme.

57. The method of claim 56, wherein the tumor inhibitory enzyme is methionase, asparaginase, lipase, phospholipase, protease, DNAase or glycosidase.

58. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is hemolysin, verotoxin, CNF1, CNF2 or PMT.

59. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules are derived from an animal, plant, bacteria, or virus.

60. The method of claim 49, wherein at least one of the secondary effector molecule is an anti-tumor protein, a pro-drug converting enzyme, an antisense molecule, a ribozyme, or an antigen.

61. The method of claim 48 or 49, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*.

62. The method of claim 48, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises an enhanced release system.

63. The method of claim 49, wherein the secondary effector molecule is a bacteriocin release factor.

64. A method for delivering one or more fusion proteins for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer to a subject in need of such treatment, comprising administering a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion proteins comprise a signal sequence and an effector molecule.

65. A method for delivering one or more fusion proteins for the treatment of a solid tumor cancer to a subject in need of such treatment, comprising administering a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion proteins comprise a ferry peptide and an effector molecule.

66. The method of claim 65, wherein the fusion protein further comprises a signal sequence.

67. The method of claim 64 or 66, wherein the signal sequence is an OmpA-like protein.

68. The method of claim 65 or 66, wherein the ferry peptide is derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetraxin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), herpes simplex virus VP22, hexahistidine, hexalysine, or hexaarginine.

69. The method of claim 64, 65 or 66, wherein the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

70. The method of claim 64, 65 or 66, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters.

71. A method of treating a solid tumor cancer in an animal, comprising administering one or more chemotherapeutic agents and a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector

molecules operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

72. A method of treating a solid tumor cancer in an animal, comprising administering one or more chemotherapeutic agents and a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more primary effector molecules and one or more secondary effector molecule operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe.

73. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a TNF family member.

74. The method of claim 73, wherein the TNF family member is tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), TNF-α-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL), TNF-α-related activation-induced cytokine (TRANCE), TNF-α- related weak inducer of apoptosis (TWEAK), CD40 ligand (CD40L), LT-α, LT-β, OX4OL, CD4OL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L, 4-1BBL, APRIL, LIGHT, TL1, TNFSF16, TNFSF17, or AITR-L.

75. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is an anti-angiogenic factor.

76. The method of claim 75, wherein the anti-angiogenic factor is endostatin, angiostatin, anti-angiogenic antithrombin III, the 29 kDa N–terminal and a 40 kDa C-terminal proteolytic fragments of fibronectin, a uPA receptor antagonist, the 16 kDa proteolytic fragment of prolactin, the 7.8 kDa proteolytic fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic 24 amino acid fragment of platelet factor-4, the anti-angiogenic factor designated 13.40, the anti-angiogenic 22 amino acid peptide fragment of thrombospondin I, the anti-angiogenic 20 amino acid peptide fragment of SPARC, RGD and NGR containing peptides, the small anti-angiogenic peptides of laminin, fibronectin, procollagen and EGF, and peptide antagonists of integrin $\alpha_V\beta_3$, or VEGF receptor.

77. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecules is a bacteriocin family member with the proviso said bacteriocin is not BRP.

78. The method of claim 77, wherein the bacteriocin family member is ColE1, ColE1a, ColE1b ColE2, ColE3, ColE4, ColE5, ColE6, ColE7, ColE8, ColE9, Colicin A,

Colicin K, Colicin L, Colicin M, cloacin DF13, pesticin A1122, staphylococcin 1580, butyricin 7423, pyocin R1 or AP41, megacin A-216, vibriocin, or microcin M15.

79. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecule is a tumor inhibitory enzyme.

80. The method of claim 79, wherein the tumor inhibitory enzyme is methionase, asparaginase, lipase, phospholipase, protease, DNAase or glycosidase.

81. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein at least one of the primary effector molecule is hemolysin, verotoxin, CNF1, CNF2, or PMT.

82. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein the primary effector molecule is derived from an animal, plant, bacteria, or virus.

83. The method of claim 82, wherein the secondary effector molecule is an immunomodulating agent, an anti-tumor protein, a pro-drug converting enzyme, an antisense molecule, a ribozyme, or an antigen.

84. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is *Salmonella*.

85. The method of claim 71, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises an enhanced release system.

86. The method of claim 72, wherein the secondary effector molecule is a bacteriocin release factor.

87. A method of treating a solid tumor cancer in an animal, comprising administering one or more chemotherapeutic agents and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion protein comprises a signal sequence and an effector molecule.

88. A method of treating a solid tumor cancer in an animal, comprising administering one or more chemotherapeutic agents and a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria

comprising one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more fusion proteins operably linked to one or more promoters, wherein said attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria is a facultative aerobe or facultative anaerobe and said fusion protein comprises a ferry peptide and an effector molecule.

89. The method of claim 88, wherein said fusion protein further comprises a signal sequence.

90. The method of claim 87 or 89, wherein the signal sequence is an OmpA-like protein.

91. The method of claim 88 or 89, wherein the ferry peptide is derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetraxin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), herpes simplex virus VP22, hexahistadine, hexalysine, or hexaarginine.

92. The method of claim 87, 88 or 89, wherein the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

93. The method of claim 87, 88 or 89, wherein the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria further comprises one or more nucleic acid molecules encoding one or more effector molecules operably linked to one or more promoters.

94. A method of treating a solid tumor cancer in an animal, comprising administering one or more chemotherapeutic agents and a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria.

95. A fusion protein comprising an OmpA-like protein and an effector molecule.

96. A fusion protein comprising a signal sequence, a ferry peptide and an effector molecule.

97. The fusion protein of claim 96, wherein the signal sequence is an OmpA-like protein.

98. The fusion protein of claim 96, wherein the ferry peptide is derived from the HIV TAT protein, the antennapedia homeodomain (penetraxin), Kaposi fibroblast growth factor (FGF) membrane-translocating sequence (MTS), herpes simplex virus VP22,

hexahistadine, hexalysine, or hexaarginine.

99. The fusion protein of claim 95 or 96, wherein the effector molecule is a primary or secondary effector molecule.

ABSTRACT

The present application discloses the preparation and use of attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria vectors for the delivery of one or more primary effector molecule(s) to the site of a solid tumor. The primary effector molecule(s) of the invention is used in the methods of the invention to treat a solid tumor cancer such as a carcinoma, melanoma, lymphoma, or sarcoma. The invention relates to the surprising discovery that effector molecules, which may be toxic when administered systemically to a host, can be delivered locally to tumors by attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria with reduced toxicity to the host. The application also discloses to the delivery of one or more optional effector molecule(s) (termed secondary effector molecules) which may be delivered by the attenuated tumor-targeted bacteria in conjunction with the primary effector molecule(s).

```
ATG GTA CGT AGC TCC TCT CGC ACT CCG TCC GAT AAG CCG GTT GCT
M   V   R   S   S   S   R   T   P   S   D   K   P   V   A

CAT GTA GTT GCT AAC CCT CAG GCA GAA GGT CAG CTG CAG TGG CTG
H   V   V   A   N   P   Q   A   E   G   Q   L   Q   W   L

AAC CGT CGC GCT AAC GCC CTG CTG GCA AAC GGC GTT GAG CTC CGT
N   R   R   A   N   A   L   L   A   N   G   V   E   L   R

GAT AAC CAG CTC GTG GTA CCT TCT GAA GGT CTG TAC CTG ATC TAT
D   N   Q   L   V   V   P   S   E   G   L   Y   L   I   Y

TCT CAA GTA CTG TTC AAG GGT CAG GGC TGC CCG TCG ACT CAT GTT
S   Q   V   L   F   K   G   Q   G   C   P   S   T   H   V

CTG CTG ACT CAC ACC ATC AGC CGT ATT GCT GTA TCT TAC CAG ACC
L   L   T   H   T   I   S   R   I   A   V   S   Y   Q   T

AAA GTT AAC CTG CTG AGC GCT ATC AAG TCT CCG TGC CAG CGT GAA
K   V   N   L   L   S   A   I   K   S   P   C   Q   R   E

ACT CCC GAG GGT GCA GAA GCG AAA CCA TGG TAT GAA CCG ATC TAC
T   P   E   G   A   E   A   K   P   W   Y   E   P   I   Y

CTG GGT GGC GTA TTT CAA CTG GAG AAA GGT GAC CGT CTG TCC GCA
L   G   G   V   F   Q   L   E   K   G   D   R   L   S   A

GAA ATC AAC CGT CCT GAC TAT CTA GAT TTC GCT GAA TCT GGC CAG
E   I   N   R   P   D   Y   L   D   F   A   E   S   G   Q


GTG TAC TTC GGT ATT ATC GCA CTG TAA
V   Y   F   G   I   I   A   L   *
```

FIG. 1

Derivation of the VNP20009(*serC*$^{--}$) strain.

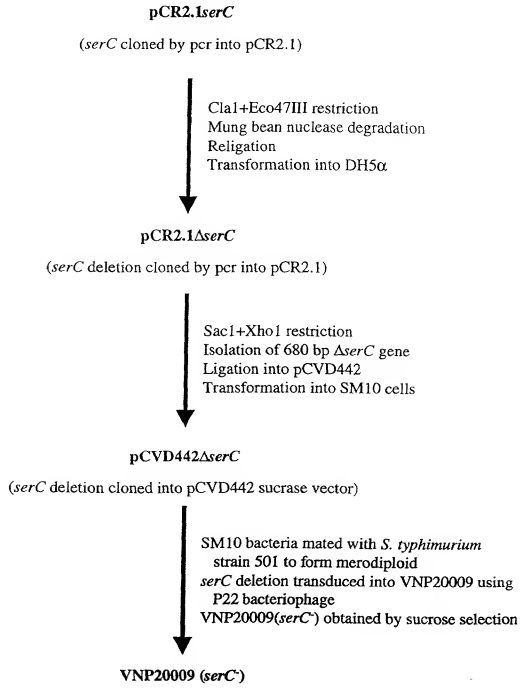


FIG. 2

Quantitation of TNFα expression by pTS-BrpTNFα Clone 2.
Mol. Wt. (kd)
38.0
26.0
20.0
14.0
pTS-BrpTNFα
(3.1x10⁷ cfu)
Parent
TNFα Standards (ng)
5
10
50
500
Lane
1
2
3
4
5
6
TNFα

FIG. 3

```
ATG AAA AAG ACA GCT ATC GCG ATT GCA GTG GCA CTG GCT GGT TTC
M   K   K   T   A   I   A   I   A   V   A   L   A   G   F

GCT ACC GTA GCG CAG GCC CAT ATG GTA CGT AGC TCC TCT CGC ACT
A   T   V   A   Q   A   H   M   V   R   S   S   S   R   T

CCG TCC GAT AAG CCG GTT GCT CAT GTA GTT GCT AAC CCT CAG GCA
P   S   D   K   P   V   A   H   V   V   A   N   P   Q   A

GAA GGT CAG CTG CAG TGG CTG AAC CGT CGC GCT AAC GCC CTG CTG
E   G   Q   L   Q   W   L   N   R   R   A   N   A   L   L

GCA AAC GGC GTT GAG CTC CGT GAT AAC CAG CTC GTG GTA CCT TCT
A   N   G   V   E   L   R   D   N   Q   L   V   V   P   S

GAA GGT CTG TAC CTG ATC TAT TCT CAA GTA CTG TTC AAG GGT CAG
E   G   L   Y   L   I   Y   S   Q   V   L   F   K   G   Q

GGC TGC CCG TCG ACT CAT GTT CTG CTG ACT CAC ACC ATC AGC CGT
G   C   P   S   T   H   V   L   L   T   H   T   I   S   R

ATT GCT GTA TCT TAC CAG ACC AAA GTT AAC CTG CTG AGC GCT ATC
I   A   V   S   Y   Q   T   K   V   N   L   L   S   A   I

AAG TCT CCG TGC CAG CGT GAA ACT CCC GAG GGT GCA GAA GCG AAA
K   S   P   C   Q   R   E   T   P   E   G   A   E   A   K

CCA TGG TAT GAA CCG ATC TAC CTG GGT GGC GTA TTT CAA CTG GAG
P   W   Y   E   P   I   Y   L   G   G   V   F   Q   L   E

AAA GGT GAC CGT CTG TCC GCA GAA ATC AAC CGT CCT GAC TAT CTA
K   G   D   R   L   S   A   E   I   N   R   P   D   Y   L

GAT TTC GCT GAA TCT GGC CAG GTG TAC TTC GGT ATT ATC GCA CTG
D   F   A   E   S   G   Q   V   Y   F   G   I   I   A   L

TAA
*
```

FIG. 4

Expression and processing of a *trc* promoter-driven *ompA*-TRAIL fusion gene product in JM109 bacteria.

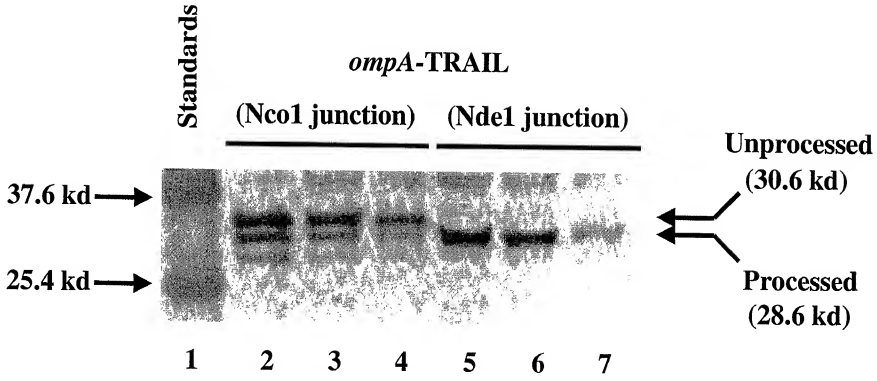


FIG. 5

```
ATG AAA AAG ACA GCT ATC GCG ATT GCA GTG GCA CTG GCT GGT TTC
M   K   K   T   A   I   A   I   A   V   A   L   A   G   F

GCT ACC GTA GCG CAG GCC CAT ATG GCT AAC GAG CTG AAG CAG ATG
A   T   V   A   Q   A   H   M   A   N   E   L   K   Q   M

CAG GAC AAG TAC TCC AAA AGT GGC ATT GCT TGT TTC TTA AAA GAA
Q   D   K   Y   S   K   S   G   I   A   C   F   L   K   E

GAT GAC AGT TAT TGG GAC CCC AAT GAC GAA GAG AGT ATG AAC AGC
D   D   S   Y   W   D   P   N   D   E   E   S   M   N   S

CCC TGC TGG CAA GTC AAG TGG CAA CTC CGT CAG CTC GTT AGA AAG
P   C   W   Q   V   K   W   Q   L   R   Q   L   V   R   K

ATG ATT TTG AGA ACC TCT GAG GAA ACC ATT TCT ACA GTT CAA GAA
M   I   L   R   T   S   E   E   T   I   S   T   V   Q   E

AAG CAA CAA AAT ATT TCT CCC CTA GTG AGA GAA AGA GGT CCT CAG
K   Q   Q   N   I   S   P   L   V   R   E   R   G   P   Q

AGA GTA GCA GCT CAC ATA ACT GGG ACC AGA GGA AGA AGC AAC ACA
R   V   A   A   H   I   T   G   T   R   G   R   S   N   T

TTG TCT TCT CCA AAC TCC AAG AAT GAA AAG GCT CTG GGC CGC AAA
L   S   S   P   N   S   K   N   E   K   A   L   G   R   K

ATA AAC TCC TGG GAA TCA TCA AGG AGT GGG CAT TCA TTC CTG AGC
I   N   S   W   E   S   S   R   S   G   H   S   F   L   S

AAC TTG CAC TTG AGG AAT GGT GAA CTG GTC ATC CAT GAA AAA GGG
N   L   H   L   R   N   G   E   L   V   I   H   E   K   G

TTT TAC TAC ATC TAT TCC CAA ACA TAC TTT CGA TTT CAG GAG GAA
F   Y   Y   I   Y   S   Q   T   Y   F   R   F   Q   E   E

ATA AAA GAA AAC ACA AAG AAC GAC AAA CAA ATG GTC CAA TAT ATT
I   K   E   N   T   K   N   D   K   Q   M   V   Q   Y   I

TAC AAA TAC ACA AGT TAT CCT GAC CCT ATA TTG TTG ATG AAA AGT
Y   K   Y   T   S   Y   P   D   P   I   L   L   M   K   S

GCT AGA AAT AGT TGT TGG TCT AAA GAT GCA GAA TAT GGA CTC TAT
A   R   N   S   C   W   S   K   D   A   E   Y   G   L   Y

TCC ATC TAT CAA GGG GGA ATA TTT GAG CTT AAG GAA AAT GAC AGA
S   I   Y   Q   G   G   I   F   E   L   K   E   N   D   R

ATT TTT GTT TCT GTA ACA AAT GAG CAC TTG ATA GAC ATG GAC CAT
I   F   V   S   V   T   N   E   H   L   I   D   M   D   H

GAA GCC AGT TTT TTC GGG GCC TTT TTA GTT GGC TAA
E   A   S   F   F   G   A   F   L   V   G   *
```

FIG. 6

Expression and processing of a *trc* promoter-driven *ompA*-TNFα fusion gene product in JM109 bacteria.

FIG. 7

```
ATG AAA AAG ACG GCT CTG GCG CTT CTG CTC TTG CTG TTA GCG CTG
M   K   K   T   A   L   A   L   L   L   L   L   L   A   L

ACT AGT GTA GCG CAG GCC GCT CCT ACT AGC TCG AGC ACT AAG AAA
T   S   V   A   Q   A   A   P   T   S   S   S   T   K   K

ACT CAA CTG CAA TTG GAG CAT CTG CTG CTG GAT CTG CAG ATG ATT
T   Q   L   Q   L   E   H   L   L   L   D   L   Q   M   I

CTG AAT GGC ATC AAT AAC TAC AAG AAC CCT AAG CTG ACT CGC ATG
L   N   G   I   N   N   Y   K   N   P   K   L   T   R   M

CTG ACT TTC AAA TTC TAC ATG CCG AAA AAG GCT ACC GAG CTC AAA
L   T   F   K   F   Y   M   P   K   K   A   T   E   L   K

CAT CTC CAG TGC CTG GAA GAG GAA CTG AAG CCG CTG GAG GAA GTA
H   L   Q   C   L   E   E   E   L   K   P   L   E   E   V

CTT AAC CTG GCA CAG TCT AAG AAC TTC CAC CTG CGT CCG CGT GAC
L   N   L   A   Q   S   K   N   F   H   L   R   P   R   D

CTG ATC TCC AAC ATC AAT GTA ATC GTT CTT GAG CTG AAG GGA TCC
L   I   S   N   I   N   V   I   V   L   E   L   K   G   S

GAA ACC ACC TTC ATG TGC GAA TAC GCT GAC GAA ACC GCC ACC ATT
E   T   T   F   M   C   E   Y   A   D   E   T   A   T   I

GTG GAG TTC CTG AAC CGT TGG ATC ACC TTT GCC CAA TCG ATC ATT
V   E   F   L   N   R   W   I   T   F   A   Q   S   I   I

AGC ACG TTA ACT TAA
S   T   L   T   *
```

FIG. 8

Periplasmic localization and processing of *ompA*-IL2 fusion proteins.

FIG. 9

```
ATG AAA CAG TCG ACT CTG GCG CTT CTG CTC TTG CTG TTA GCG CTG
M   K   Q   S   T   L   A   L   L   L   L   L   L   A   L

ACT AGT GTG GCC AAA GCG GCT CCT ACT AGC TCG AGC ACT AAG AAA
T   S   V   A   K   A   A   P   T   S   S   S   T   K   K

ACT CAA CTG CAA TTG GAG CAT CTG CTG CTG GAT CTG CAG ATG ATT
T   Q   L   Q   L   E   H   L   L   L   D   L   Q   M   I

CTG AAT GGC ATC AAT AAC TAC AAG AAC CCT AAG CTG ACT CGC ATG
L   N   G   I   N   N   Y   K   N   P   K   L   T   R   M

CTG ACT TTC AAA TTC TAC ATG CCG AAA AAG GCT ACC GAG CTC AAA
L   T   F   K   F   Y   M   P   K   K   A   T   E   L   K

CAT CTC CAG TGC CTG GAA GAG GAA CTG AAG CCG CTG GAG GAA GTA
H   L   Q   C   L   E   E   E   L   K   P   L   E   E   V

CTT AAC CTG GCA CAG TCT AAG AAC TTC CAC CTG CGT CCG CGT GAC
L   N   L   A   Q   S   K   N   F   H   L   R   P   R   D

CTG ATC TCC AAC ATC AAT GTA ATC GTT CTT GAG CTG AAG GGA TCC
L   I   S   N   I   N   V   I   V   L   E   L   K   G   S

GAA ACC ACC TTC ATG TGC GAA TAC GCT GAC GAA ACC GCC ACC ATT
E   T   T   F   M   C   E   Y   A   D   E   T   A   T   I

GTG GAG TTC CTG AAC CGT TGG ATC ACC TTT GCC CAA TCG ATC ATT
V   E   F   L   N   R   W   I   T   F   A   Q   S   I   I

AGC ACG TTA ACT TAA
S   T   L   T   *
```

FIG. 10

Antitumor efficacy of pTS-BrpTNFα Clone 2 in a staged Colon 38 tumor model.

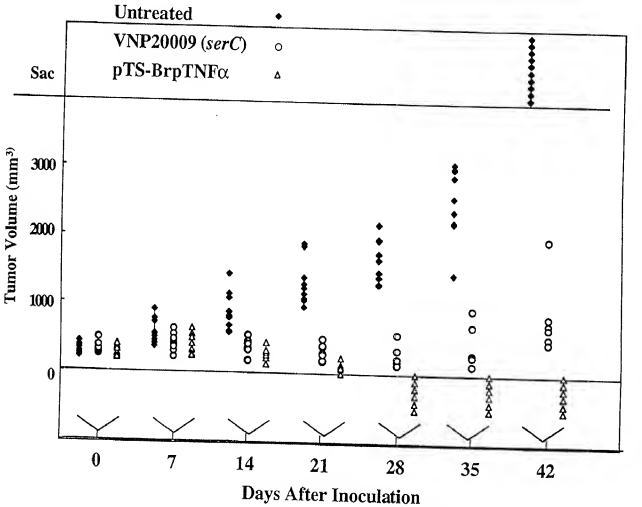


FIG. 11

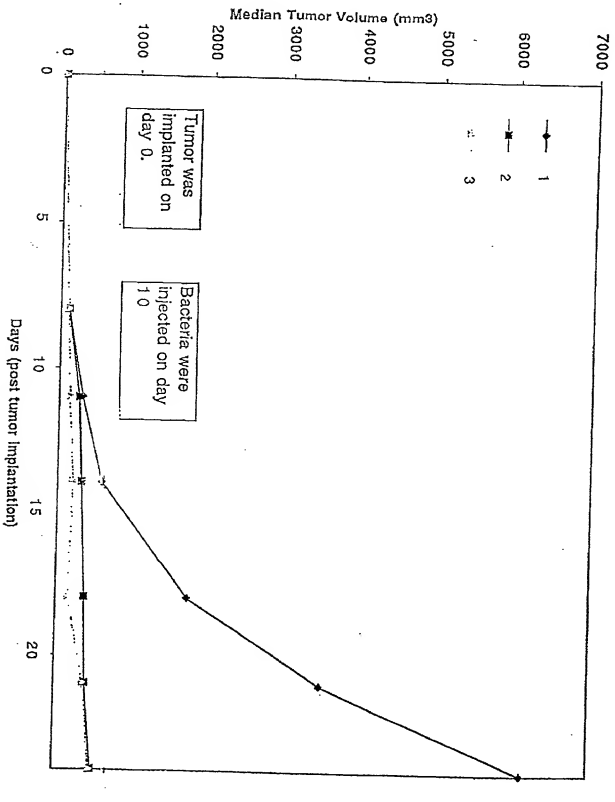

Median Tumor Volume (mm3)
0
1000
2000
3000
4000
5000
6000
7000
1
2
3
Tumor was implanted on day 0.
Bacteria were injected on day 10
0
5
10
15
20
Days (post tumor implantation)

FIG. 12

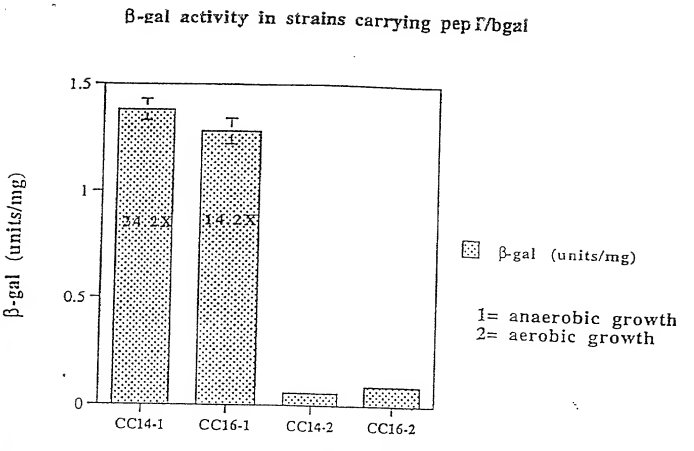


FIG. 13A

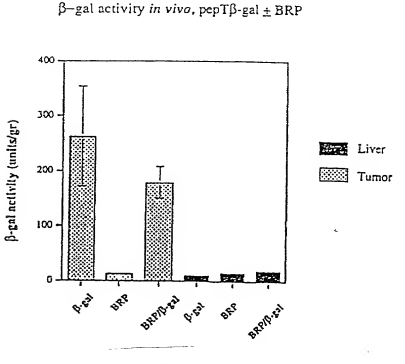


FIG. 13B

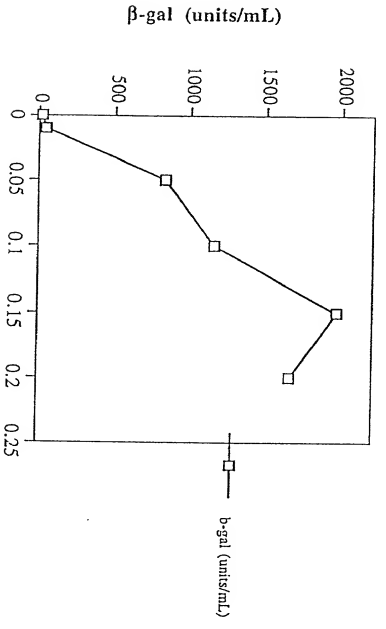
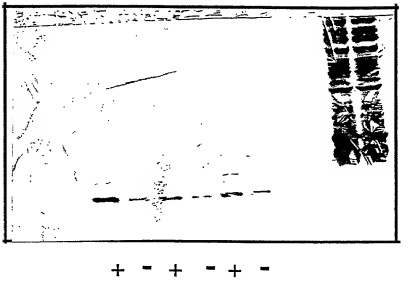

Expression of β-gal using TET promoter
β-gal (units/mL)
2000
1500
1000
500
0
0
0.05
0.1
0.15
0.2
0.25
[TET] ug/mL
b-gal (units/mL)

FIG. 14

A.



B.

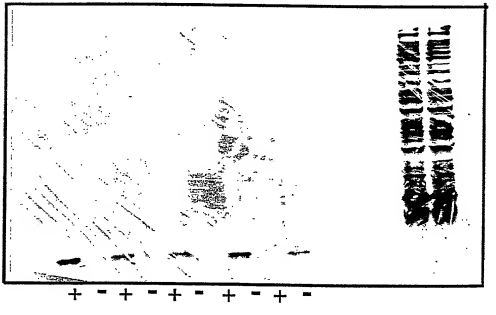


FIG. 15

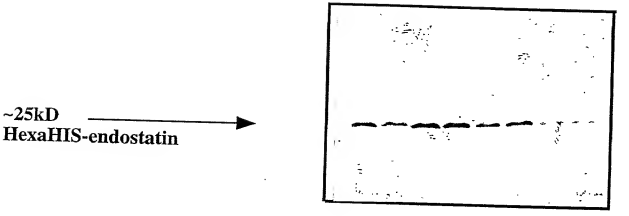


FIG. 16

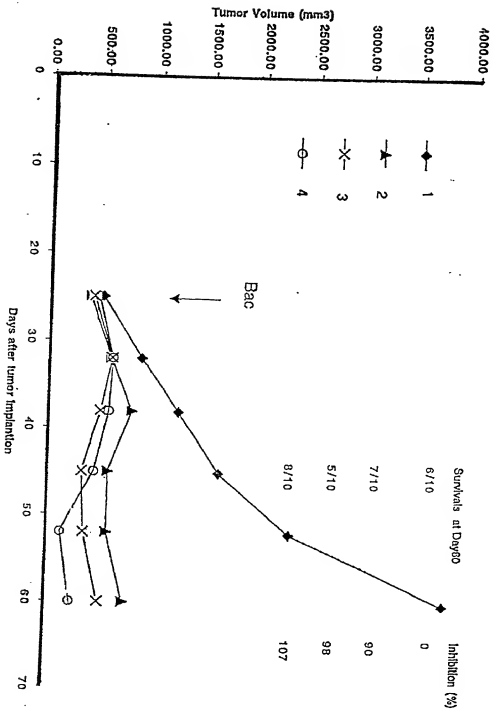

Tumor Volume (mm3)
0.00
500.00
1000.00
1500.00
2000.00
2500.00
3000.00
3500.00
4000.00
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
Days after tumor implantion
1
2
3
4
Bac
Survivals at Day60
6/10
7/10
5/10
8/10
Inhibition (%)
0
90
98
107

FIG. 17

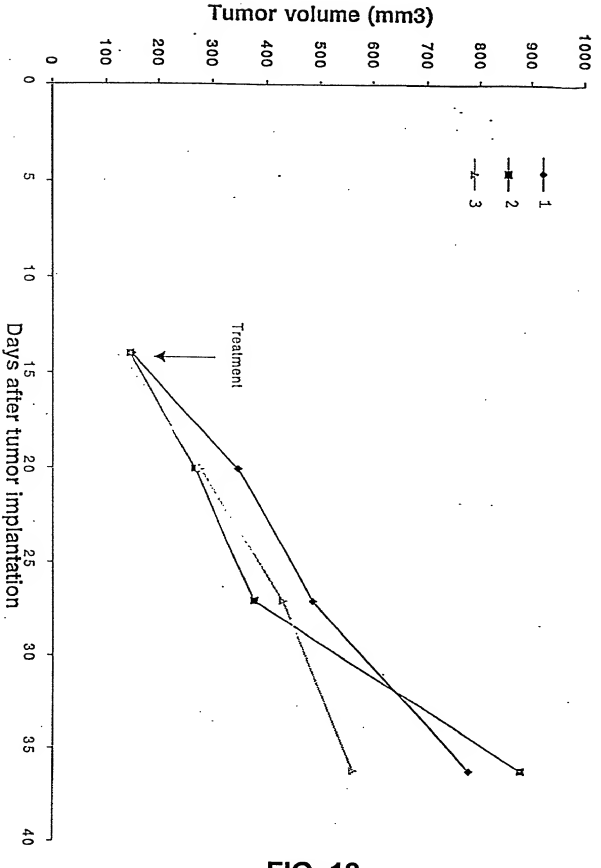

Tumor volume (mm3)
0
100
200
300
400
500
600
700
800
900
1000
1
2
3
Treatment
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
Days after tumor implantation

FIG. 18

Inhibitory activity of lysates from a Salmonella strain expressing human endostatin
Inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation
180%
160%
140%
120%
100%
80%
60%
40%
20%
0%
pTrc
pTrcEndostatin

FIG. 19

Inhibitory activity of lysates from Salmonella strains expressing anti-angiogenic peptides
Inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation
70%
60%
50%
40%
30%
20%
10%
0%
pTrc
pTrcPlatelet Factor-4 (47-70)
pTrcThrombospondin (13.40)

FIG. 20

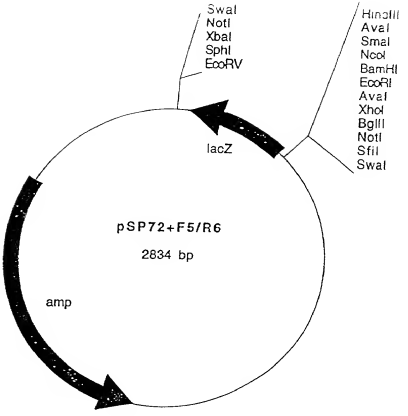

SwaI
NotI
XbaI
SphI
EcoRV
HindIII
AvaI
SmaI
NcoI
BamHI
EcoRI
AvaI
XhoI
BglII
NotI
SfiI
SwaI
lacZ
pSP72+F5/R6
2834 bp
amp

FIG. 21

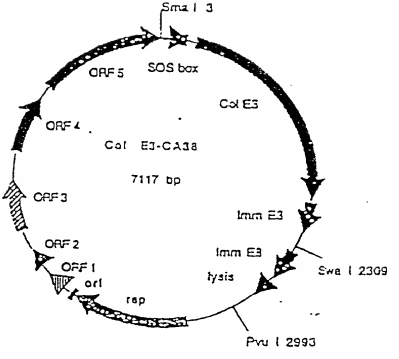

Sma I 3
SOS box
ORF 5
Col E3
ORF 4
Col E3-CA38
7117 bp
ORF 3
Imm E3
ORF 2
Imm E3
ORF 1
lysis
Swa I 2309
ori
rep
Pvu I 2993

FIG. 22

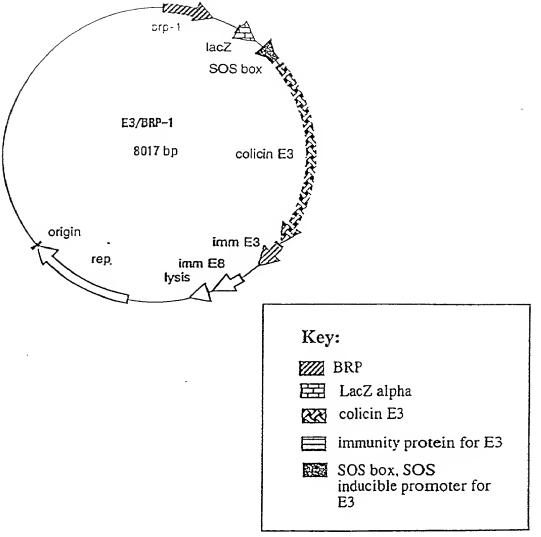

brp-1
lacZ
SOS box
E3/BRP-1
8017 bp
colicin E3
origin
rep
imm E8
lysis
imm E3
Key:
BRP
LacZ alpha
colicin E3
immunity protein for E3
SOS box, SOS inducible promoter for E3

FIG. 23

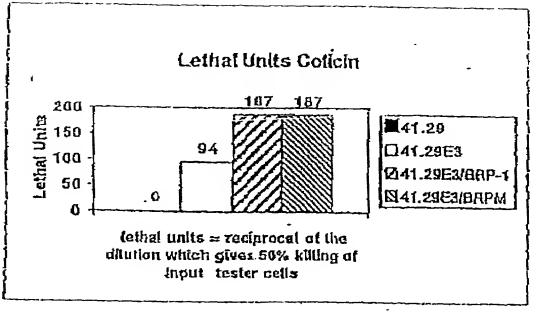

Lethal Units Colicin
Lethal Units
200
150
100
50
0
0
94
187
187
41.29
41.29E3
41.29E3/BRP-1
41.29E3/BRPM
lethal units = reciprocal of the dilution which gives 50% killing of input tester cells

FIG. 24

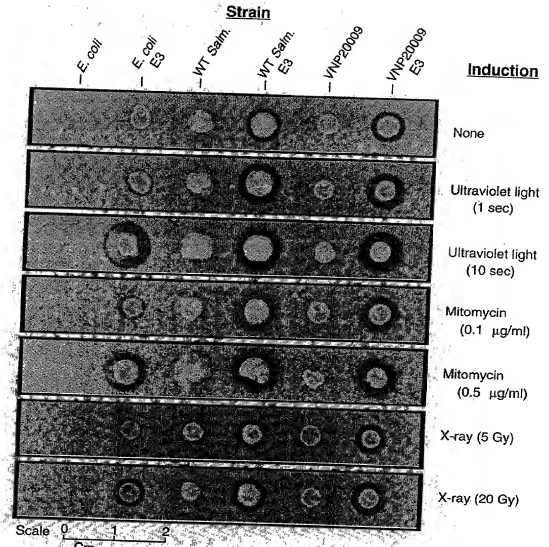

Strain
E. coli
E. coli E3
WT Salm.
WT Salm. E3
VNP20009
VNP20009 E3
Induction
None
Ultraviolet light (1 sec)
Ultraviolet light (10 sec)
Mitomycin (0.1 µg/ml)
Mitomycin (0.5 µg/ml)
X-ray (5 Gy)
X-ray (20 Gy)
Scale 0 1 2
Cm

FIG. 25

Efficacy of 41.2.9/ColE3 on C38 Murine Colon Carcinoma
Tumor Volume (mm3)
1600
1400
1200
1000
800
600
400
200
0
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
Daysafter tumor Implantation
Untreated control
41.2.9 (1.5x106/mouse)
41.2.9/ColE3 (1.5x106/mouse)
41-29/ColE3

FIG. 26

Anti-tumor Activity of41.2.9 /Col/E3 on DLD1 Human Colon Carcinoma in Nu/NU Mice
Tumor Volume (mm3)
900.00
800.00
700.00
600.00
500.00
400.00
300.00
200.00
100.00
0.00
Control
41.2.9
41.2.9 /E3
41.2.9/E3
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
Days after tumor implantation

FIG. 27

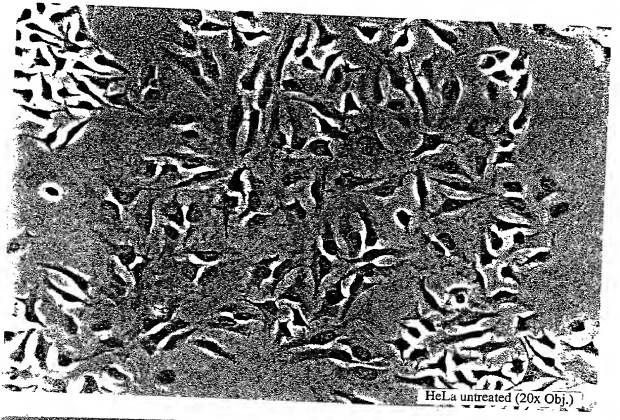
Efficacy of 41.2.9/ColE3 on B16 Murine Melanoma
Tumor Volume (mm3)
14000.00
12000.00
10000.00
8000.00
6000.00
4000.00
2000.00
0.00
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
Days after tumor implantation
Untreated
41.2.9 (1.5x10⁶/mouse)
41.2.9/ColE3 (1.5x10⁶/mouse)
Survival at day42
0/10
5/10
5/10
Bac.

FIG. 28

Cytotocicity of CNF1 in 41.2.9 against HeLa cells
% cell killing
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
Series1
CNF1 cl.7
CNF1 cl.8
41.2.9
E.coli J96
bacteria clones

FIG. 29

A



B

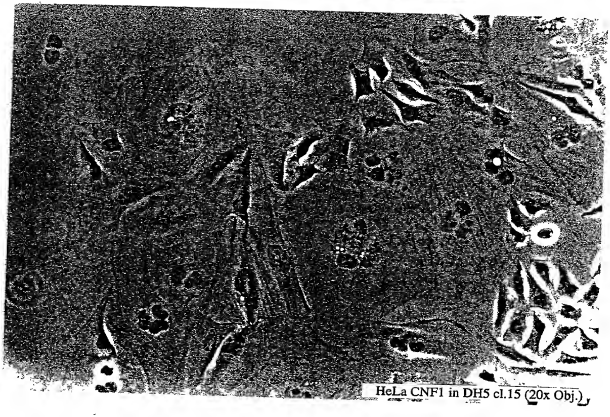


FIG. 30

```
GATATCATTC TGGCCTCTGA CGTTGTGATG GTCGCACGTG GCGATCTGGG CGTTGAAATC GGCGATCCGG      70
AGCTGGTTGG TATCCAGAAA GCGCTGATTC GCCGTGCGCG TCAGCTAAAC CGCGCAGTCA TCACCGCAAC     140
GCAAATGATG GAGTCGATGA TCACCAACCC GATGCCGACC CGTGCGGAAG TGATGGACGT GGCGAACGCC     210
GTCCTGGATG GCACGGATGC GGTTATGCTG TCTGCCGAAA CCGCAGCCGG TCAGTATCCT TCTGAAACCG     280
TTGCCGCAAT GGCGCGCGTC TGCCTGGGCG CAGAAAAAAT CCCCAGCATC AATGTGTCTA AACACCGTCT     350
CGACGTGCAG TTCGACAACG TTGAAGAAGC CATTGCCATG TCTGCGATGT ATGCGGCAAA CCATCTGAAA     420
GGCGTTACCG CGATCATCAC CATGACGGAA TCCGGTCGTA CCGCGCTAAT GACTTCCCGT ATCAGCTCCG     490
GCCTGCCGAT TTTCGCCATG TCGCGCCATG AACGCACGCT GAACCTGACC GCGCTCTATC GCGGAGTAAC     560
GCCGGTGCAT TTTGATAGCG CGGCTGATGG CGTTGTCGCG GCACATGAAG CTGTTAATCT GCTGCGCGAT     630
AAAGGGTATC TGGTTTCCGG CGACCTGGTT ATCGTGACCC AGGGCGATGT CATGAGCACC GTCGGTTCAA     700
CCAATACCAC GCGGCCGCCC CCTTAATTAA CCCCGCATGC GGGGGGCCAT ATAGGCCGGG GATTTAAATG     770
CAAACGTCCG CCGAAACGCC GACGCACTGT GTTCCAGATA TAGTCAAAAA CCGGATTACC CTGATTATGA     840
AACATCGCCG CCATTTTTTG CCCCTGAGAG GCCATCAGCA TGGCTGGAAT GTCGACGCCC CAGCCATGCG     910
GTACGAGAAA AATGACTTTT TCGTCGTTAC GACGCATCTC CTCGATAATC TCCAGACCTT CCCAGTCAAC     980
ACGCTGTTGA ATTTTTTTCG GACCGCGCAT CGCCAACTCA GCCATCATCG CCATTGCCTG TGGCGCGGTG    1050
GCGAACATCT CATCGACAAT CGCTTCGCGC TCAGCTTCGC TACGCTGCGG AAAGCACAAC GACAGATTAA    1120
TTAGCGCCCG GCGACGAGAA CTCTTCCCCA GCCGTCCGGC AAAACGCCCC AGCGTCGCCA GCAAAGGGTC    1190
GCGGAATGAT GCCGGTGTTA ATGCGATCCC CGCCATTGCC GCCGCGCCCA ACCAGGCGCC CCAATACTGT    1260
GGATAGCGAA AGGATTTTTC GAATTCAGGG ATATACTCAC TATTATTTTT TTTGGTTTCC ATGCTTTTCC    1330
AGGGTCTGCT GACGCGAAAA GGAATTGTGA ATAGTGTAGC GACGTCTGCG TCTCACACAA AACAAAAAAG    1400
CCGGCACACA TCGCGTACCG GCTCTGTCAG CGCATTTGTT AATCGAAGCG CAGTTGCGGC AGAACCTCTT    1470
TCACCTGTGC CAGGTATTCA CGACGATCTG ACCCCGTCAG ACCTTCCGTG CGCGGCAATT TTGCTGTCAG    1530
AGGGTTAACG GCTTGCTGGT TGATC                                                    1555
```

FIG. 31

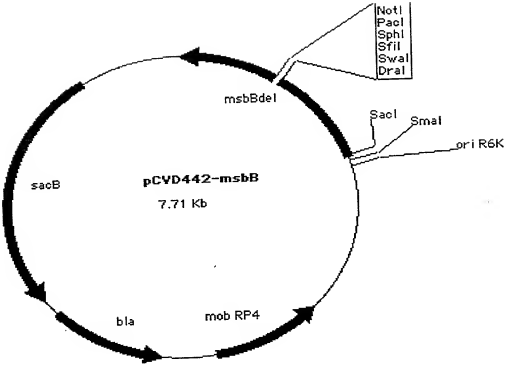

NotI
PacI
SphI
SfiI
SwaI
DraI
msbBdel
SacI
SmaI
ori R6K
sacB
pCVD442-msbB
7.71 Kb
bla
mob RP4

FIG. 32

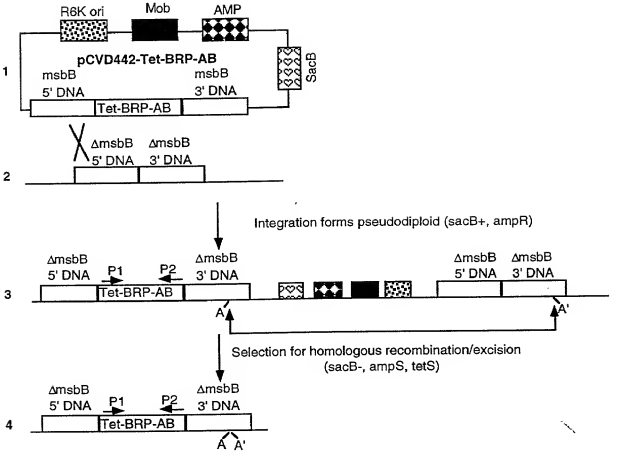

R6K ori
Mob
AMP
pCVD442-Tet-BRP-AB
msbB
5' DNA
msbB
3' DNA
Tet-BRP-AB
SacB
1
ΔmsbB
5' DNA
ΔmsbB
3' DNA
2
Integration forms pseudodiploid (sacB+, ampR)
P1
P2
3
A
A'
Selection for homologous recombination/excision
(sacB-, ampS, tetS)
4

FIG.33

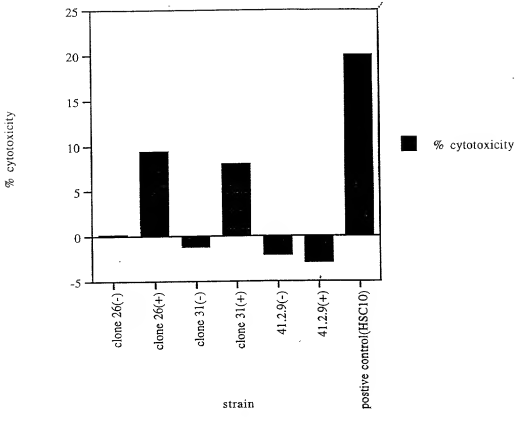

25
20
15
10
5
0
-5
% cytotoxicity
clone 26(-)
clone 26(+)
clone 31(-)
clone 31(+)
41.2.9(-)
41.2.9(+)
positive control(HSC10)
strain
% cytotoxicity

FIG. 34

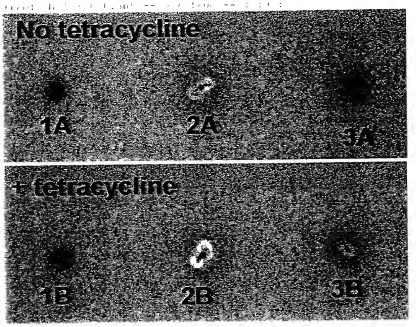


FIG. 35

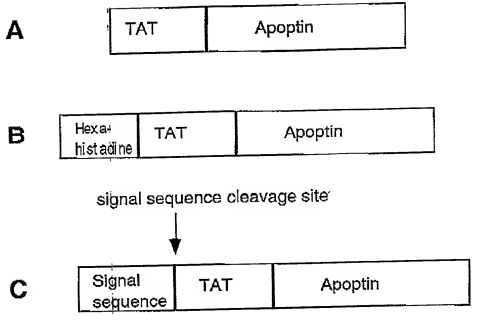

A
TAT
Apoptin
B
Hexa-histadine
TAT
Apoptin
signal sequence cleavage site
C
Signal sequence
TAT
Apoptin

FIG. 36

Protein Sequence of 616-4 F

Length of 616-4 F: 551 bp; Listed from: 1 to: 551;
Translated from: 7 to: 409 (Entire region);
Genetic Code used: Universal; Wed, Aug 16, 2000 1:40 PM

```
Frame 1          M   A   Y   G   R   K   K   R   R   Q   R   R   R   M   N
      NAG ACC ATG GCT TAT GGC AGA AAA AAA AGA AGA CAG AGA AGA AGA ATG AAC
                9          18          27          36          45

 A   L   Q   E   D   T   P   P   G   P   S   T   V   F   R   P   P   T   S
 GCG CTG CAG GAA GAT ACC CCG CCG GGC CCG TCC ACC GTG TTT CGC CCG CCG ACC TCC
       60          69          78          87          96         105

 S   R   P   L   E   T   P   H   C   R   E   I   R   I   G   Y   A   G   I
 TCC CGC CCG CTG GAA ACC CCG CAT TGC CGC GAA ATC CGC ATC GGC ATC GCG GGC ATC
      117         126         135         144         153         162

 T   I   T   L   S   L   C   G   C   A   N   A   R   A   P   T   L   R   S
 ACC ATC ACC CTG TCC CTG TGC GGC TGC GCG AAC GCG CGC GCG CCG ACC CTG CGC TCC
      174         183         192         201         210         219

 A   T   A   D   N   S   E   N   T   G   F   K   N   V   P   D   L   R   T
 GCG ACC GCG GAT AAC TCC GAA AAC ACC GGC TTT AAA AAC GTC CCG GAT CTG CGC ACC
      231         240         249         258         267         276

 D   Q   P   K   P   P   S   K   K   R   S   C   D   P   S   E   Y   R   V
 GAT CAG CCG AAA CCG CCG TCC AAA AAA CGC TCC TGC GAT CCG TCC GAA TAT CGC GTC
      288         297         306         315         324         333

 S   E   L   K   E   S   L   I   T   T   T   P   S   R   P   R   T   A   R
 TCC GAA CTG AAA GAA TCC CTG ATC ACC ACC ACC CCG TCC CGC CCG CGC ACC GCC CGC
      345         354         363         372         381         390

 R   C   I   R   L   .
 CGC TGC ATC CGC CTC TGA AAG CTT GGC TGT TTT GGC GGA TGA GAG AAG ATT TTC AGC
      402         411         420         429         438         447

 CTG ATA CAG ATT AAA TCA GAA CGC AGA AGC GGT CTG ATA AAA CAG AAT TTG CCT GGC
      459         468         477         486         495         504

 GGC AGT AGC GCG GTG GTC CCA CCT GAC CCC ATG CCG AAC TCA GA
      516         525         534         543
```

FIG. 37

Protein Sequence of TAP6H8 trcF page 1

Length of TAP6H8 trcF: 751 bp; Listed from: 1 to: 444;
Translated from: 7 to: 427 (Entire region);
Genetic Code used: Universal; Mon, Aug 14, 2000 3:19 PM

```
Frame 1          M   A   H   H   H   H   H   Y   G   R   K   K   R   R
         NAG ACC ATG GCT CAT CAC CAT CAC CAC CAT TAT GGC CGC AAA AAA CGC CGT
                   9          18          27          36          45

 Q   R   R   R   M   N   A   L   Q   E   D   T   P   P   G   P   S   T   V
CAG CGC CGT CGC ATG AAC GCG CTG CAG GAA GAT ACC CCG CCG GGC CCG TCC ACC GTG
     60          69          78          87          96         105

 F   R   P   P   T   S   S   R   P   L   E   T   P   H   C   R   E   I   R
TTT CGC CCG CCG ACC TCC TCC CGC CCG CTG GAA ACC CCG CAT TGC CGC GAA ATC CGC
    117         126         135         144         153         162

 I   G   I   A   G   I   T   I   T   L   S   L   C   G   C   A   N   A   R
ATC GGC ATC GCG GGC ATC ACC ATC ACC CTG TCC CTG TGC GGC TGC GCG AAC GCG CGC
    174         183         192         201         210         219

 A   P   T   L   R   S   A   T   A   D   N   S   E   N   T   G   F   K   N
GCG CCG ACC CTG CGC TCC GCG ACC GCG GAT AAC TCC GAA AAC ACC GGC TTT AAA AAC
    231         240         249         258         267         276

 V   P   D   L   R   T   D   Q   P   K   P   P   S   K   K   R   S   C   D
GTC CCG GAT CTG CGC ACC GAT CAG CCG AAA CCG CCG TCC AAA AAA CGC TCC TGC GAT
    288         297         306         315         324         333

 P   S   E   Y   R   V   S   E   L   K   E   S   L   I   T   T   T   P   S
CCG TCC GAA TAT CGC GTC TCC GAA CTG AAA GAA TCC CTG ATC ACC ACC ACC CCG TCC
    345         354         363         372         381         390

 R   P   R   T   A   R   R   C   I   R   L   .
CGC CCG CGC ACC GCC CGC CGC TGC ATC CGC CTC TGA AAG CTT GGC TGT TTT
    402         411         420         429         438
```

FIG. 38

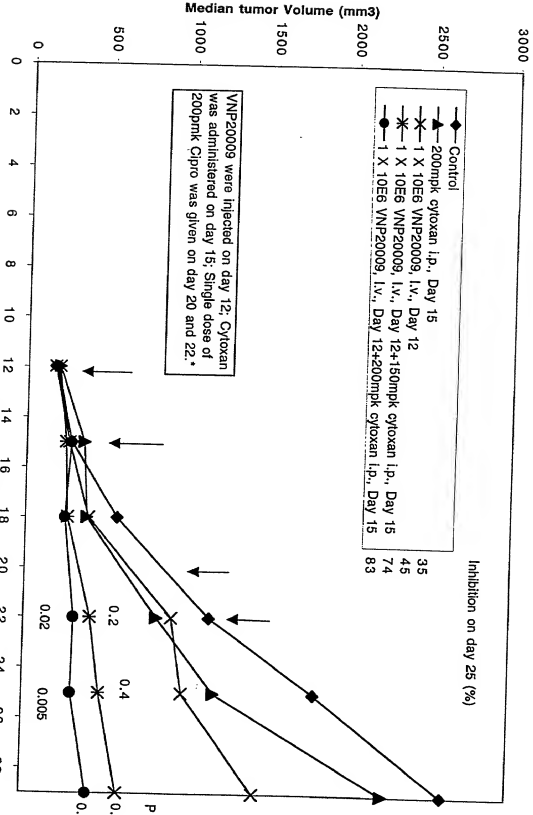

Median tumor Volume (mm3)
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
0 2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 26 28
Days (post tumor implantation)
Control
200mpk cytoxan i.p., Day 15
1 X 10E6 VNP20009, i.v., Day 12
1 X 10E6 VNP20009, i.v., Day 12+150mpk cytoxan i.p., Day 15
1 X 10E6 VNP20009, i.v., Day 12+200mpk cytoxan i.p., Day 15
Inhibition on day 25 (%)
35
45
74
83
VNP20009 were injected on day 12; Cytoxan was administered on day 15; Single dose of 200pmk Cipro was given on day 20 and 22.*
0.02
0.2
0.4
0.005
0.01
0.008
P Value

FIG. 39

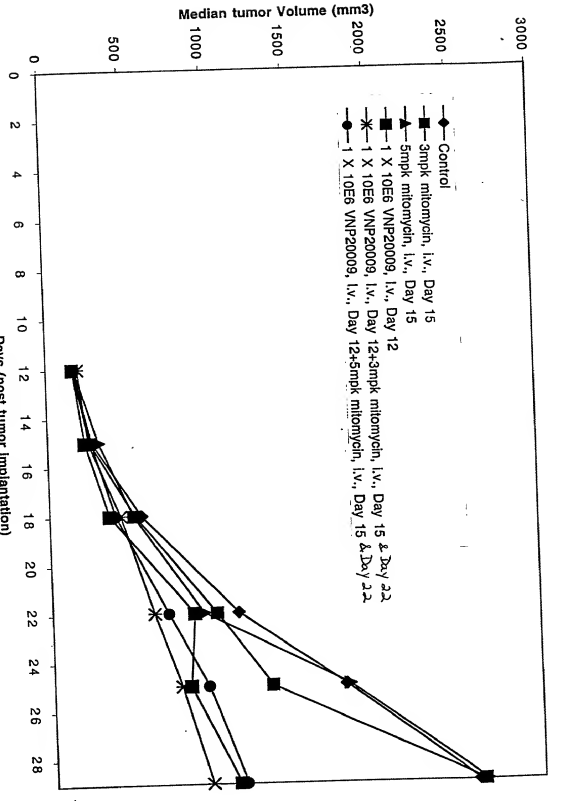

Median tumor Volume (mm3)
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
18
20
22
24
26
28
Days (post tumor implantation)
Control
3mpk mitomycin, i.v., Day 15
5mpk mitomycin, i.v., Day 15
1 X 10E6 VNP20009, i.v., Day 12
1 X 10E6 VNP20009, i.v., Day 12+3mpk mitomycin, i.v., Day 15 & Day 22
1 X 10E6 VNP20009, i.v., Day 12+5mpk mitomycin, i.v., Day 15 & Day 22

FIG. 40

Median Tumor Volume (mm3)
4000
3500
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
Control
1 x 10E6 VNP20009, i.v.
5mpk Cisplatin, i.p. x 2
1 x 10E6 VNP20009, i.v. + 5mpk cisplatin, i.p. x 3
Tumor was implanted on day 0; Bacteria were injected on day 11; Cisplatin was given on day 14, 19 & 33*.
P value
0.0005
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
Days (post tumor implantation)
* Groups of control and treated with cisplatin only were stopped on day 29.

FIG. 41

DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below at 201 et seq. underneath my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor if only one name is listed at 201 below, or an original, first and joint inventor if plural names are listed at 201 et seq. below, of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TUMOR-TARGETED DELIVERY OF EFFECTOR MOLECULES

and for which a patent application:
☒ is attached hereto and includes amendment(s) filed on *(if applicable)*
☐ was filed in the United States on as Application No. *(for declaration not accompanying application)*
with amendment(s) filed on *(if applicable)*
☐ was filed as PCT international Application No. on and was amended under PCT Article 19 on *(if applicable)*

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified application, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information known to me to be material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119(a)-(d) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed:

EARLIEST FOREIGN APPLICATION(S), IF ANY, FILED PRIOR TO THE FILING DATE OF THE APPLICATION			
APPLICATION NUMBER	COUNTRY	DATE OF FILING (day, month, year)	PRIORITY CLAIMED
			YES ☐ NO ☐
			YES ☐ NO ☐

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING DATE
60/157,637	October 4, 2000
60/157,581	October 4, 2000
60/157,500	October 4, 2000

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

APPLICATION SERIAL NO.	FILING DATE	STATUS		
		PATENTED	PENDING	ABANDONED

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint S. Leslie Misrock (Reg. No. 18872), Harry C. Jones, III (Reg. No. 20280), Berj A. Terzian (Reg. No. 20060), David Weild, III (Reg. No. 21094), Jonathan A. Marshall (Reg. No. 24614), Barry D. Rein (Reg. No. 22411), Stanton T. Lawrence, III (Reg. No. 25736), Charles E. McKenney (Reg. No. 22795), Philip T. Shannon (Reg. No. 24278), Francis E. Morris (Reg. No. 24615), Charles E. Miller (Reg. No. 24576), Gidon D. Stern (Reg. No. 27469), John J. Lauter, Jr. (Reg. No. 27814), Brian M. Poissant (Reg. No. 28462), Brian D. Coggio (Reg. No. 27624), Rory J. Radding (Reg. No. 28749), Stephen J. Harbulak (Reg. No. 29166), Donald J. Goodell (Reg. No. 19766), James N. Palik (Reg. No. 25510), Thomas E. Friebel (Reg. No. 29258), Laura A. Coruzzi (Reg. No. 30742), Jennifer Gordon (Reg. No. 30753), Allan A. Fanucci (Reg. No. 30256), Geraldine F. Baldwin (Reg. No. 31232), Victor N. Balancia (Reg. No. 31231), Samuel B. Abrams (Reg. No. 30605), Steven I. Wallach (Reg. No. 35402), Marcia H. Sundeen (Reg. No. 30893), Paul J. Zegger (Reg. No. 33821), Edmond R. Bannon (Reg. No. 32110), Bruce J. Barker (Reg. No. 33291), Adriane M. Antler (Reg. No. 32605), Thomas G. Rowan (Reg. No. 34419), James G. Markey (Reg. No. 31636), Thomas D. Kohler (Reg. No. 32797), Scott D. Stimpson (Reg. No. 33607), Gary S. Williams (Reg. No. 31066), William S. Galliani (Reg. No. 33885), Ann L. Gisolfi (Reg. No. 31956), Todd A. Wagner (Reg. No. 35399), Scott B. Familant (Reg. No. 35514), Kelly D. Talcott (Reg. No. 39582), Francis D. Cerrito (Reg. No.38100), Anthony M. Insogna (Reg. No. 35203), Brian M. Rothery (Reg. No. 35340), Brian D. Siff (Reg. No. 35679), and Alan Tenenbaum (Reg. No. 34939), all of Pennie & Edmonds LLP, whose addresses are 1155 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10036, 1667 K Street N.W., Washington, DC 20006 and 3300 Hillview Avenue, Palo Alto, CA 94304, and each of them, my attorneys, to prosecute this application, and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith.

SEND CORRESPONDENCE TO:	PENNIE & EDMONDS LLP 1155 Avenue of the Americas New York, N.Y 10036-2711	DIRECT TELEPHONE CALLS TO: PENNIE & EDMONDS LLP DOCKETING (212) 790-2803

201	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME Bermudes	FIRST NAME David	MIDDLE NAME G.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY Wallingford	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET 524 North Main Street	CITY Wallingford	STATE OR COUNTRY Connecticut	ZIP CODE 06492
202	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME King	FIRST NAME Ivan	MIDDLE NAME C.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY North Haven	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET 65 Blue Hills Road	CITY New Haven	STATE OR COUNTRY Connecticut	ZIP CODE 06473
203	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME Clairmont	FIRST NAME Caroline	MIDDLE NAME A.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY Cheshire	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET 80 Merwin Circle	CITY Cheshire	STATE OR COUNTRY Connecticut	ZIP CODE 06410
204	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME Lin	FIRST NAME Stanley	MIDDLE NAME L.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY Madison	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET 173 Old Toll Road	CITY Madison	STATE OR COUNTRY Connecticut	ZIP CODE 06443
205	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME Belcourt	FIRST NAME Michael	MIDDLE NAME	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY Wallingford	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET 9 Algonquin Drive	CITY Wallingford	STATE OR COUNTRY Connecticut	ZIP CODE 06942
206	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME	FIRST NAME	MIDDLE NAME	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET	CITY	STATE OR COUNTRY	ZIP CODE

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 201	SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 202	SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 203
David G. Bermudes	Ivan C. King	Caroline A. Clairmont
DATE	DATE	DATE
SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 204	SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 205	SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 206
Stanley L. Lin	Michael Belcourt	
DATE	DATE August 23, 2000	DATE

DECLARATION
AND POWER OF ATTORNEY

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below at 201 et seq. underneath my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor if only one name is listed at 201 below, or an original, first and joint inventor if plural names are listed at 201 et seq. below, of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TUMOR-TARGETED DELIVERY OF EFFECTOR MOLECULES

and for which a patent application:
☒ is attached hereto and includes amendment(s) filed on *(if applicable)*
☐ was filed in the United States on as Application No. *(for declaration not accompanying application)*
with amendment(s) filed on *(if applicable)*
☐ was filed as PCT international Application No. on and was amended under PCT Article 19 on *(if applicable)*

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified application, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information known to me to be material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119(a)-(d) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed:

EARLIEST FOREIGN APPLICATION(S), IF ANY, FILED PRIOR TO THE FILING DATE OF THE APPLICATION			
APPLICATION NUMBER	COUNTRY	DATE OF FILING (day, month, year)	PRIORITY CLAIMED
			YES ☐ NO ☐
			YES ☐ NO ☐

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING DATE
60/157,637	October 4, 2000
60/157,581	October 4, 2000
60/157,500	October 4, 2000

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

APPLICATION SERIAL NO.	FILING DATE	STATUS		
		PATENTED	PENDING	ABANDONED

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint S. Leslie Misrock (Reg. No. 18872), Harry C. Jones, III (Reg. No. 20280), Berj A. Terzian (Reg. No. 20060), David Weild, III (Reg. No. 21094), Jonathan A. Marshall (Reg. No. 24614), Barry D. Rein (Reg. No. 22411), Stanton T. Lawrence, III (Reg. No. 25736), Charles E. McKenney (Reg. No. 22795), Philip T. Shannon (Reg. No. 24278), Francis E. Morris (Reg. No. 24615), Charles E. Miller (Reg. No. 24576), Gidon D. Stern (Reg. No. 27469), John J. Lauter, Jr. (Reg. No. 27814), Brian M. Poissant (Reg. No. 28462), Brian D. Coggio (Reg. No. 27624), Rory J. Radding (Reg. No. 28749), Stephen J. Harbulak (Reg. No. 29166), Donald J. Goodell (Reg. No. 19766), James N. Palik (Reg. No. 25510), Thomas E. Friebel (Reg. No. 29258), Laura A. Coruzzi (Reg. No. 30742), Jennifer Gordon (Reg. No. 30753), Allan A. Fanucci (Reg. No. 30256), Geraldine F. Baldwin (Reg. No. 31232), Victor N. Balancia (Reg. No. 31231), Samuel B. Abrams (Reg. No. 30605), Steven I. Wallach (Reg. No. 35402), Marcia H. Sundeen (Reg. No. 30893), Paul J. Zegger (Reg. No. 33821), Edmond R. Bannon (Reg. No. 32110), Bruce J. Barker (Reg. No. 33291), Adriane M. Antler (Reg. No. 32605), Thomas G. Rowan (Reg. No. 34419), James G. Markey (Reg. No. 31636), Thomas D. Kohler (Reg. No. 32797), Scott D. Stimpson (Reg. No. 33607), Gary S. Williams (Reg. No. 31066), William S. Galliani (Reg. No. 33885), Ann L. Gisolfi (Reg. No. 31956), Todd A. Wagner (Reg. No. 35399), Scott B. Familani (Reg. No. 35514), Kelly D. Talcott (Reg. No. 39582), Francis D. Cerrito (Reg. No.38100), Anthony M. Insogna (Reg. No. 35203), Brian M. Rothery (Reg. No. 35340), Brian D. Siff (Reg. No. 35679), and Alan Tenenbaum (Reg. No. 34939), all of Pennie & Edmonds LLP, whose addresses are 1155 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10036, 1667 K Street N.W., Washington, DC 20006 and 3300 Hillview Avenue, Palo Alto, CA 94304, and each of them, my attorneys, to prosecute this application, and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith.

SEND CORRESPONDENCE TO: PENNIE & EDMONDS LLP
1155 Avenue of the Americas
New York, N.Y. 10036-2711

DIRECT TELEPHONE CALLS TO:
PENNIE & EDMONDS LLP DOCKETING
(212) 790-2803

201	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Bermudes	FIRST NAME: David	MIDDLE NAME: G.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY: Wallingford	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP: U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET: 524 North Main Street	CITY: Wallingford	STATE OR COUNTRY: Connecticut	ZIP CODE: 06492
202	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME: King	FIRST NAME: Ivan	MIDDLE NAME: C.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY: North Haven	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP: U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET: 65 Blue Hills Road	CITY: New Haven	STATE OR COUNTRY: Connecticut	ZIP CODE: 06473
203	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Clairmont	FIRST NAME: Caroline	MIDDLE NAME: A.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY: Cheshire	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP: U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET: 80 Merwin Circle	CITY: Cheshire	STATE OR COUNTRY: Connecticut	ZIP CODE: 06410
204	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Lin	FIRST NAME: Stanley	MIDDLE NAME: L.	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY: Madison	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP: U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET: 173 Old Toll Road	CITY: Madison	STATE OR COUNTRY: Connecticut	ZIP CODE: 06443
205	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME: Belcourt	FIRST NAME: Michael	MIDDLE NAME:	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY: Wallingford	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY: Connecticut	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP: U.S.A.	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET: 9 Algonquin Drive	CITY: Wallingford	STATE OR COUNTRY: Connecticut	ZIP CODE: 06942
206	FULL NAME OF INVENTOR	LAST NAME:	FIRST NAME:	MIDDLE NAME:	
	RESIDENCE & CITIZENSHIP	CITY:	STATE OR FOREIGN COUNTRY:	COUNTRY OF CITIZENSHIP:	
	POST OFFICE ADDRESS	STREET:	CITY:	STATE OR COUNTRY:	ZIP CODE:

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 201	SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 202	SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 203
David G. Bermudes	Ivan C. King	Caroline A. Clairmont
DATE: Aug 23, 2000	DATE: Aug 23, 00	DATE: Aug 23, 2000
SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 204	**SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 205**	**SIGNATURE OF INVENTOR 206**
Stanley L. Lin	Michael Belcourt	
DATE: Aug. 23, 2000	DATE:	DATE:

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Bermudes, G.
King, I.
Clairmont, C.
Lin, S.
Belcourt, M.

<120> COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS FOR TUMOR-TARGETED DELIVERY OF EFFECTOR MOLECULES

<130> 8002-059

<150> 60/157,581
<151> 1999-10-04

<150> 60/157,637
<151> 1999-10-04

<160> 61

<170> FastSEQ for Windows Version 3.0

<210> 1
<211> 26
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 1
gaagatcttc cggaggaggg gaaatg 26

<210> 2
<211> 44
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 2
cgggatccga gctcgagggc ccgggaaagg atctaagaag atcc 44

<210> 3
<211> 477
<212> DNA
<213> Homo sapiens

<220>
<221> CDS
<222> (1)...(474)

<400> 3

```
atg gta cgt agc tcc tct cgc act ccg tcc gat aag ccg gtt gct cat       48
Met Val Arg Ser Ser Ser Arg Thr Pro Ser Asp Lys Pro Val Ala His
 1               5                  10                  15

gta gtt gct aac cct cag gca gaa ggt cag ctg cag tgg ctg aac cgt       96
Val Val Ala Asn Pro Gln Ala Glu Gly Gln Leu Gln Trp Leu Asn Arg
            20                  25                  30

cgc gct aac gcc ctg ctg gca aac ggc gtt gag ctc cgt gat aac cag      144
Arg Ala Asn Ala Leu Leu Ala Asn Gly Val Glu Leu Arg Asp Asn Gln
        35                  40                  45

ctc gtg gta cct tct gaa ggt ctg tac ctg atc tat tct caa gta ctg      192
Leu Val Val Pro Ser Glu Gly Leu Tyr Leu Ile Tyr Ser Gln Val Leu
    50                  55                  60

ttc aag ggt cag ggc tgc ccg tcg act cat gtt ctg ctg act cac acc      240
Phe Lys Gly Gln Gly Cys Pro Ser Thr His Val Leu Leu Thr His Thr
65                  70                  75                  80

atc agc cgt att gct gta tct tac cag acc aaa gtt aac ctg ctg agc      288
Ile Ser Arg Ile Ala Val Ser Tyr Gln Thr Lys Val Asn Leu Leu Ser
                85                  90                  95

gct atc aag tct ccg tgc cag cgt gaa act ccc gag ggt gca gaa gcg      336
Ala Ile Lys Ser Pro Cys Gln Arg Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Ala Glu Ala
            100                 105                 110

aaa cca tgg tat gaa ccg atc tac ctg ggt ggc gta ttt caa ctg gag      384
Lys Pro Trp Tyr Glu Pro Ile Tyr Leu Gly Gly Val Phe Gln Leu Glu
        115                 120                 125

aaa ggt gac cgt ctg tcc gca gaa atc aac cgt cct gac tat cta gat      432
Lys Gly Asp Arg Leu Ser Ala Glu Ile Asn Arg Pro Asp Tyr Leu Asp
    130                 135                 140

ttc gct gaa tct ggc cag gtg tac ttc ggt att atc gca ctg               474
Phe Ala Glu Ser Gly Gln Val Tyr Phe Gly Ile Ile Ala Leu
145                 150                 155

taa                                                                  477
```

<210> 4
<211> 158
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 4

```
Met Val Arg Ser Ser Ser Arg Thr Pro Ser Asp Lys Pro Val Ala His
 1               5                  10                  15
Val Val Ala Asn Pro Gln Ala Glu Gly Gln Leu Gln Trp Leu Asn Arg
            20                  25                  30
Arg Ala Asn Ala Leu Leu Ala Asn Gly Val Glu Leu Arg Asp Asn Gln
        35                  40                  45
Leu Val Val Pro Ser Glu Gly Leu Tyr Leu Ile Tyr Ser Gln Val Leu
    50                  55                  60
Phe Lys Gly Gln Gly Cys Pro Ser Thr His Val Leu Leu Thr His Thr
65                  70                  75                  80
```

```
Ile Ser Arg Ile Ala Val Ser Tyr Gln Thr Lys Val Asn Leu Leu Ser
                85                  90                  95
Ala Ile Lys Ser Pro Cys Gln Arg Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Ala Glu Ala
            100                 105                 110
Lys Pro Trp Tyr Glu Pro Ile Tyr Leu Gly Gly Val Phe Gln Leu Glu
        115                 120                 125
Lys Gly Asp Arg Leu Ser Ala Glu Ile Asn Arg Pro Asp Tyr Leu Asp
    130                 135                 140
Phe Ala Glu Ser Gly Gln Val Tyr Phe Gly Ile Ile Ala Leu
145                 150                 155
```

<210> 5
<211> 28
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 5
ccgacgcgtt gacacctgaa aactggag 28

<210> 6
<211> 29
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 6
ccgacgcgtg aaaggatctc aagaagatc 29

<210> 7
<211> 543
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Fusion construct

<221> CDS
<222> (1)...(540)

<400> 7

```
atg aaa aag aca gct atc gcg att gca gtg gca ctg gct ggt ttc gct      48
Met Lys Lys Thr Ala Ile Ala Ile Ala Val Ala Leu Ala Gly Phe Ala
 1               5                  10                  15

acc gta gcg cag gcc cat atg gta cgt agc tcc tct cgc act ccg tcc      96
Thr Val Ala Gln Ala His Met Val Arg Ser Ser Ser Arg Thr Pro Ser
            20                  25                  30

gat aag ccg gtt gct cat gta gtt gct aac cct cag gca gaa ggt cag     144
Asp Lys Pro Val Ala His Val Val Ala Asn Pro Gln Ala Glu Gly Gln
        35                  40                  45
```

```
ctg cag tgg ctg aac cgt cgc gct aac gcc ctg ctg gca aac ggc gtt      192
Leu Gln Trp Leu Asn Arg Arg Ala Asn Ala Leu Leu Ala Asn Gly Val
     50                  55                  60

gag ctc cgt gat aac cag ctc gtg gta cct tct gaa ggt ctg tac ctg      240
Glu Leu Arg Asp Asn Gln Leu Val Val Pro Ser Glu Gly Leu Tyr Leu
 65                  70                  75                  80

atc tat tct caa gta ctg ttc aag ggt cag ggc tgc ccg tcg act cat      288
Ile Tyr Ser Gln Val Leu Phe Lys Gly Gln Gly Cys Pro Ser Thr His
                 85                  90                  95

gtt ctg ctg act cac acc atc agc cgt att gct gta tct tac cag acc      336
Val Leu Leu Thr His Thr Ile Ser Arg Ile Ala Val Ser Tyr Gln Thr
            100                 105                 110

aaa gtt aac ctg ctg agc gct atc aag tct ccg tgc cag cgt gaa act      384
Lys Val Asn Leu Leu Ser Ala Ile Lys Ser Pro Cys Gln Arg Glu Thr
        115                 120                 125

ccc gag ggt gca gaa gcg aaa cca tgg tat gaa ccg atc tac ctg ggt      432
Pro Glu Gly Ala Glu Ala Lys Pro Trp Tyr Glu Pro Ile Tyr Leu Gly
    130                 135                 140

ggc gta ttt caa ctg gag aaa ggt gac cgt ctg tcc gca gaa atc aac      480
Gly Val Phe Gln Leu Glu Lys Gly Asp Arg Leu Ser Ala Glu Ile Asn
145                 150                 155                 160

cgt cct gac tat cta gat ttc gct gaa tct ggc cag gtg tac ttc ggt      528
Arg Pro Asp Tyr Leu Asp Phe Ala Glu Ser Gly Gln Val Tyr Phe Gly
                165                 170                 175

att atc gca ctg taa                                                 543
Ile Ile Ala Leu
            180
```

<210> 8
<211> 180
<212> PRT
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 8

```
Met Lys Lys Thr Ala Ile Ala Ile Ala Val Ala Leu Ala Gly Phe Ala
 1               5                  10                  15
Thr Val Ala Gln Ala His Met Val Arg Ser Ser Ser Arg Thr Pro Ser
            20                  25                  30
Asp Lys Pro Val Ala His Val Val Ala Asn Pro Gln Ala Glu Gly Gln
        35                  40                  45
Leu Gln Trp Leu Asn Arg Arg Ala Asn Ala Leu Leu Ala Asn Gly Val
    50                  55                  60
Glu Leu Arg Asp Asn Gln Leu Val Val Pro Ser Glu Gly Leu Tyr Leu
65                  70                  75                  80
Ile Tyr Ser Gln Val Leu Phe Lys Gly Gln Gly Cys Pro Ser Thr His
                85                  90                  95
Val Leu Leu Thr His Thr Ile Ser Arg Ile Ala Val Ser Tyr Gln Thr
            100                 105                 110
```

```
Lys Val Asn Leu Leu Ser Ala Ile Lys Ser Pro Cys Gln Arg Glu Thr
        115                 120                 125
Pro Glu Gly Ala Glu Ala Lys Pro Trp Tyr Glu Pro Ile Tyr Leu Gly
    130                 135                 140
Gly Val Phe Gln Leu Glu Lys Gly Asp Arg Leu Ser Ala Glu Ile Asn
145                 150                 155                 160
Arg Pro Asp Tyr Leu Asp Phe Ala Glu Ser Gly Gln Val Tyr Phe Gly
                165                 170                 175
Ile Ile Ala Leu
            180

      <210> 9
      <211> 801
      <212> DNA
      <213> Artificial Sequence

      <220>
      <223> Fusion construct

      <221> CDS
      <222> (1)...(798)

      <400> 9
atg aaa aag aca gct atc gcg att gca gtg gca ctg gct ggt ttc gct       48
Met Lys Lys Thr Ala Ile Ala Ile Ala Val Ala Leu Ala Gly Phe Ala
 1               5                  10                  15

acc gta gcg cag gcc cat atg gct aac gag ctg aag cag atg cag gac       96
Thr Val Ala Gln Ala His Met Ala Asn Glu Leu Lys Gln Met Gln Asp
            20                  25                  30

aag tac tcc aaa agt ggc att gct tgt ttc tta aaa gaa gat gac agt      144
Lys Tyr Ser Lys Ser Gly Ile Ala Cys Phe Leu Lys Glu Asp Asp Ser
        35                  40                  45

tat tgg gac ccc aat gac gaa gag agt atg aac agc ccc tgc tgg caa      192
Tyr Trp Asp Pro Asn Asp Glu Glu Ser Met Asn Ser Pro Cys Trp Gln
    50                  55                  60

gtc aag tgg caa ctc cgt cag ctc gtt aga aag atg att ttg aga acc      240
Val Lys Trp Gln Leu Arg Gln Leu Val Arg Lys Met Ile Leu Arg Thr
65                  70                  75                  80

tct gag gaa acc att tct aca gtt caa gaa aag caa caa aat att tct      288
Ser Glu Glu Thr Ile Ser Thr Val Gln Glu Lys Gln Gln Asn Ile Ser
                85                  90                  95

ccc cta gtg aga gaa aga ggt cct cag aga gta gca gct cac ata act      336
Pro Leu Val Arg Glu Arg Gly Pro Gln Arg Val Ala Ala His Ile Thr
            100                 105                 110

ggg acc aga gga aga agc aac aca ttg tct tct cca aac tcc aag aat      384
Gly Thr Arg Gly Arg Ser Asn Thr Leu Ser Ser Pro Asn Ser Lys Asn
        115                 120                 125

gaa aag gct ctg ggc cgc aaa ata aac tcc tgg gaa tca tca agg agt      432
Glu Lys Ala Leu Gly Arg Lys Ile Asn Ser Trp Glu Ser Ser Arg Ser
    130                 135                 140
```

```
ggg cat tca ttc ctg agc aac ttg cac ttg agg aat ggt gaa ctg gtc      480
Gly His Ser Phe Leu Ser Asn Leu His Leu Arg Asn Gly Glu Leu Val
145                 150                 155                 160

atc cat gaa aaa ggg ttt tac tac atc tat tcc caa aca tac ttt cga      528
Ile His Glu Lys Gly Phe Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Ser Gln Thr Tyr Phe Arg
                165                 170                 175

ttt cag gag gaa ata aaa gaa aac aca aag aac gac aaa caa atg gtc      576
Phe Gln Glu Glu Ile Lys Glu Asn Thr Lys Asn Asp Lys Gln Met Val
            180                 185                 190

caa tat att tac aaa tac aca agt tat cct gac cct ata ttg ttg atg      624
Gln Tyr Ile Tyr Lys Tyr Thr Ser Tyr Pro Asp Pro Ile Leu Leu Met
        195                 200                 205

aaa agt gct aga aat agt tgt tgg tct aaa gat gca gaa tat gga ctc      672
Lys Ser Ala Arg Asn Ser Cys Trp Ser Lys Asp Ala Glu Tyr Gly Leu
    210                 215                 220

tat tcc atc tat caa ggg gga ata ttt gag ctt aag gaa aat gac aga      720
Tyr Ser Ile Tyr Gln Gly Gly Ile Phe Glu Leu Lys Glu Asn Asp Arg
225                 230                 235                 240

att ttt gtt tct gta aca aat gag cac ttg ata gac atg gac cat gaa      768
Ile Phe Val Ser Val Thr Asn Glu His Leu Ile Asp Met Asp His Glu
                245                 250                 255

gcc agt ttt ttc ggg gcc ttt tta gtt ggc taa                         801
Ala Ser Phe Phe Gly Ala Phe Leu Val Gly
            260                 265
```

<210> 10
<211> 266
<212> PRT
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 10

```
Met Lys Lys Thr Ala Ile Ala Ile Ala Val Ala Leu Ala Gly Phe Ala
 1               5                  10                  15
Thr Val Ala Gln Ala His Met Ala Asn Glu Leu Lys Gln Met Gln Asp
            20                  25                  30
Lys Tyr Ser Lys Ser Gly Ile Ala Cys Phe Leu Lys Glu Asp Asp Ser
        35                  40                  45
Tyr Trp Asp Pro Asn Asp Glu Glu Ser Met Asn Ser Pro Cys Trp Gln
    50                  55                  60
Val Lys Trp Gln Leu Arg Gln Leu Val Arg Lys Met Ile Leu Arg Thr
65                  70                  75                  80
Ser Glu Glu Thr Ile Ser Thr Val Gln Glu Lys Gln Gln Asn Ile Ser
                85                  90                  95
Pro Leu Val Arg Glu Arg Gly Pro Gln Arg Val Ala Ala His Ile Thr
            100                 105                 110
Gly Thr Arg Gly Arg Ser Asn Thr Leu Ser Ser Pro Asn Ser Lys Asn
        115                 120                 125
Glu Lys Ala Leu Gly Arg Lys Ile Asn Ser Trp Glu Ser Ser Arg Ser
    130                 135                 140
```

```
Gly His Ser Phe Leu Ser Asn Leu His Leu Arg Asn Gly Glu Leu Val
145                 150                 155                 160
Ile His Glu Lys Gly Phe Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Ser Gln Thr Tyr Phe Arg
                165                 170                 175
Phe Gln Glu Glu Ile Lys Glu Asn Thr Lys Asn Asp Lys Gln Met Val
            180                 185                 190
Gln Tyr Ile Tyr Lys Tyr Thr Ser Tyr Pro Asp Pro Ile Leu Leu Met
        195                 200                 205
Lys Ser Ala Arg Asn Ser Cys Trp Ser Lys Asp Ala Glu Tyr Gly Leu
    210                 215                 220
Tyr Ser Ile Tyr Gln Gly Gly Ile Phe Glu Leu Lys Glu Asn Asp Arg
225                 230                 235                 240
Ile Phe Val Ser Val Thr Asn Glu His Leu Ile Asp Met Asp His Glu
                245                 250                 255
Ala Ser Phe Phe Gly Ala Phe Leu Val Gly
            260                 265
```

<210> 11
<211> 465
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Fusion construct

<221> CDS
<222> (1)...(462)

<400> 11

```
atg aaa aag acg gct ctg gcg ctt ctg ctc ttg ctg tta gcg ctg act       48
Met Lys Lys Thr Ala Leu Ala Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Thr
 1               5                  10                  15

agt gta gcg cag gcc gct cct act agc tcg agc act aag aaa act caa       96
Ser Val Ala Gln Ala Ala Pro Thr Ser Ser Ser Thr Lys Lys Thr Gln
            20                  25                  30

ctg caa ttg gag cat ctg ctg ctg gat ctg cag atg att ctg aat ggc      144
Leu Gln Leu Glu His Leu Leu Leu Asp Leu Gln Met Ile Leu Asn Gly
        35                  40                  45

atc aat aac tac aag aac cct aag ctg act cgc atg ctg act ttc aaa      192
Ile Asn Asn Tyr Lys Asn Pro Lys Leu Thr Arg Met Leu Thr Phe Lys
    50                  55                  60

ttc tac atg ccg aaa aag gct acc gag ctc aaa cat ctc cag tgc ctg      240
Phe Tyr Met Pro Lys Lys Ala Thr Glu Leu Lys His Leu Gln Cys Leu
65                  70                  75                  80

gaa gag gaa ctg aag ccg ctg gag gaa gta ctt aac ctg gca cag tct      288
Glu Glu Glu Leu Lys Pro Leu Glu Glu Val Leu Asn Leu Ala Gln Ser
                85                  90                  95

aag aac ttc cac ctg cgt ccg cgt gac ctg atc tcc aac atc aat gta      336
Lys Asn Phe His Leu Arg Pro Arg Asp Leu Ile Ser Asn Ile Asn Val
            100                 105                 110
```

```
atc gtt ctt gag ctg aag gga tcc gaa acc acc ttc atg tgc gaa tac      384
Ile Val Leu Glu Leu Lys Gly Ser Glu Thr Thr Phe Met Cys Glu Tyr
        115                 120                 125

gct gac gaa acc gcc acc att gtg gag ttc ctg aac cgt tgg atc acc      432
Ala Asp Glu Thr Ala Thr Ile Val Glu Phe Leu Asn Arg Trp Ile Thr
    130                 135                 140

ttt gcc caa tcg atc att agc acg tta act taa                          465
Phe Ala Gln Ser Ile Ile Ser Thr Leu Thr
145                 150
```

<210> 12
<211> 154
<212> PRT
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 12

```
Met Lys Lys Thr Ala Leu Ala Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Thr
 1               5                  10                  15
Ser Val Ala Gln Ala Ala Pro Thr Ser Ser Ser Thr Lys Lys Thr Gln
            20                  25                  30
Leu Gln Leu Glu His Leu Leu Leu Asp Leu Gln Met Ile Leu Asn Gly
        35                  40                  45
Ile Asn Asn Tyr Lys Asn Pro Lys Leu Thr Arg Met Leu Thr Phe Lys
    50                  55                  60
Phe Tyr Met Pro Lys Lys Ala Thr Glu Leu Lys His Leu Gln Cys Leu
65                  70                  75                  80
Glu Glu Glu Leu Lys Pro Leu Glu Glu Val Leu Asn Leu Ala Gln Ser
                85                  90                  95
Lys Asn Phe His Leu Arg Pro Arg Asp Leu Ile Ser Asn Ile Asn Val
            100                 105                 110
Ile Val Leu Glu Leu Lys Gly Ser Glu Thr Thr Phe Met Cys Glu Tyr
        115                 120                 125
Ala Asp Glu Thr Ala Thr Ile Val Glu Phe Leu Asn Arg Trp Ile Thr
    130                 135                 140
Phe Ala Gln Ser Ile Ile Ser Thr Leu Thr
145                 150
```

<210> 13
<211> 465
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Fusion construct

<221> CDS
<222> (1)...(462)

<400> 13

```
atg aaa cag tcg act ctg gcg ctt ctg ctc ttg ctg tta gcg ctg act       48
Met Lys Gln Ser Thr Leu Ala Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Thr
 1               5                  10                  15
```

```
agt gtg gcc aaa gcg gct cct act agc tcg agc act aag aaa act caa        96
Ser Val Ala Lys Ala Ala Pro Thr Ser Ser Ser Thr Lys Lys Thr Gln
                20                  25                  30

ctg caa ttg gag cat ctg ctg ctg gat ctg cag atg att ctg aat ggc       144
Leu Gln Leu Glu His Leu Leu Leu Asp Leu Gln Met Ile Leu Asn Gly
        35                  40                  45

atc aat aac tac aag aac cct aag ctg act cgc atg ctg act ttc aaa       192
Ile Asn Asn Tyr Lys Asn Pro Lys Leu Thr Arg Met Leu Thr Phe Lys
    50                  55                  60

ttc tac atg ccg aaa aag gct acc gag ctc aaa cat ctc cag tgc ctg       240
Phe Tyr Met Pro Lys Lys Ala Thr Glu Leu Lys His Leu Gln Cys Leu
65                  70                  75                  80

gaa gag gaa ctg aag ccg ctg gag gaa gta ctt aac ctg gca cag tct       288
Glu Glu Glu Leu Lys Pro Leu Glu Glu Val Leu Asn Leu Ala Gln Ser
                85                  90                  95

aag aac ttc cac ctg cgt ccg cgt gac ctg atc tcc aac atc aat gta       336
Lys Asn Phe His Leu Arg Pro Arg Asp Leu Ile Ser Asn Ile Asn Val
            100                 105                 110

atc gtt ctt gag ctg aag gga tcc gaa acc acc ttc atg tgc gaa tac       384
Ile Val Leu Glu Leu Lys Gly Ser Glu Thr Thr Phe Met Cys Glu Tyr
        115                 120                 125

gct gac gaa acc gcc acc att gtg gag ttc ctg aac cgt tgg atc acc       432
Ala Asp Glu Thr Ala Thr Ile Val Glu Phe Leu Asn Arg Trp Ile Thr
    130                 135                 140

ttt gcc caa tcg atc att agc acg tta act taa                           465
Phe Ala Gln Ser Ile Ile Ser Thr Leu Thr
145                 150
```

<210> 14
<211> 154
<212> PRT
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 14

```
Met Lys Gln Ser Thr Leu Ala Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Thr
 1               5                  10                  15
Ser Val Ala Lys Ala Ala Pro Thr Ser Ser Ser Thr Lys Lys Thr Gln
            20                  25                  30
Leu Gln Leu Glu His Leu Leu Leu Asp Leu Gln Met Ile Leu Asn Gly
        35                  40                  45
Ile Asn Asn Tyr Lys Asn Pro Lys Leu Thr Arg Met Leu Thr Phe Lys
    50                  55                  60
Phe Tyr Met Pro Lys Lys Ala Thr Glu Leu Lys His Leu Gln Cys Leu
65                  70                  75                  80
Glu Glu Glu Leu Lys Pro Leu Glu Glu Val Leu Asn Leu Ala Gln Ser
                85                  90                  95
Lys Asn Phe His Leu Arg Pro Arg Asp Leu Ile Ser Asn Ile Asn Val
            100                 105                 110
```

Ile Val Leu Glu Leu Lys Gly Ser Glu Thr Thr Phe Met Cys Glu Tyr
115 120 125
Ala Asp Glu Thr Ala Thr Ile Val Glu Phe Leu Asn Arg Trp Ile Thr
130 135 140
Phe Ala Gln Ser Ile Ile Ser Thr Leu Thr
145 150

<210> 15
<211> 26
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 15
agtctagaca atcaggcgaa gaacgg 26

<210> 16
<211> 25
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 16
agccatggag tcaccctcac ttttc 25

<210> 17
<211> 31
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 17
ggatccttaa gacccacttt cacatttaag t 31

<210> 18
<211> 28
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 18
ggttccatgg ttcacttttc tctatcac 28

<210> 19
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 19
gtgtccatgg ggcacagcca ccgcgacttc cag 33

<210> 20
<211> 34
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 20
acacgagctc ctacttggag gcagtcatga agct 34

<210> 21
<211> 72
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 21
gtgtccatgg ctcggcgggc aagtgtcggg actgaccatc atcatcatca tcatcacagc 60
caccgcgact tc 72

<210> 22
<211> 35
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 22
gtgcggatcc ctacttggag gcagtcatga agctg 35

<210> 23
<211> 16
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 23
Met Ala Arg Arg Ala Ser Val Gly Thr Asp His His His His His His
1 5 10 15

<210> 24
<211> 22
<212> PRT
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Peptide sequence TiP 13.40

<400> 24

```
Ala Tyr Arg Trp Arg Leu Ser His Arg Pro Lys Thr Gly Phe Ile Arg
 1               5                  10                  15
Val Val Met Tyr Glu Gly
            20
```

<210> 25
<211> 66
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Nucleotide sequence encoding TiP13.40

<400> 25
gcgtaccgct ggcgcctgtc ccatcgcccg aaaaccggct ttatccgcgt ggtgatgtac 60
gaaggc 66

<210> 26
<211> 101
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 26
gtgtactagt gtggcgcagg cggcgtaccg ctggcgcctg tcccatcgcc cgaaaaccgg 60
ctttatccgc gtggtgatgt acgaaggcta aggatccgcg c 101

<210> 27
<211> 101
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 27
gcgcggatcc ttagccttcg tacatcacca cgcggataaa gccggttttc gggcgatggg 60
acaggcgcca gcggtacgcc gcctgcgcca cactagtaca c 101

<210> 28
<211> 101
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 28
```
Met Ser Ser Ala Ala Gly Phe Cys Ala Ser Arg Pro Gly Leu Leu Phe
 1               5                  10                  15
Leu Gly Leu Leu Leu Leu Pro Leu Val Val Ala Phe Ala Ser Ala Glu
            20                  25                  30
Ala Glu Glu Asp Gly Asp Leu Gln Cys Leu Cys Val Lys Thr Thr Ser
        35                  40                  45
Gln Val Arg Pro Arg His Ile Thr Ser Leu Glu Val Ile Lys Ala Gly
    50                  55                  60
Pro His Cys Pro Thr Ala Gln Leu Ile Ala Thr Leu Lys Asn Gly Arg
65                  70                  75                  80
```

Lys Ile Cys Leu Asp Leu Gln Ala Pro Leu Tyr Lys Lys Ile Ile Lys
85 90 95
Lys Leu Leu Glu Ser
100

<210> 29
<211> 106
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 29
cttcactagt gtggcgcagg cgaacggccg caaaatctgc ctggacctgc aggcgccgct 60
gtacaaaaaa atcatcaaaa aactgctgga aagctaagga tccgcg 106

<210> 30
<211> 106
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 30
cgcggatcct tagctttcca gcagtttttt gatgattttt ttgtacagcg gcgcctgcag 60
gtccaggcag attttgcggc cgttcgcctg cgccacacta gtgaag 106

<210> 31
<211> 85
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 31
Ile Tyr Ser Phe Asp Gly Arg Asp Ile Met Thr Asp Pro Ser Trp Pro
1 5 10 15
Gln Lys Val Ile Trp His Gly Ser Ser Pro His Gly Val Arg Leu Val
20 25 30
Asp Asn Tyr Cys Glu Ala Trp Arg Thr Ala Asp Thr Ala Val Thr Gly
35 40 45
Leu Ala Ser Pro Leu Ser Thr Gly Lys Ile Leu Asp Gln Lys Ala Tyr
50 55 60
Ser Cys Ala Asn Arg Leu Ile Val Leu Cys Ile Glu Asn Ser Phe Met
65 70 75 80
Thr Asp Ala Arg Lys
85

<210> 32
<211> 44
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 32
ggcttcacta gtgtggcgca ggcgatatac tcctttgatg gtcg 44

<210> 33
<211> 37
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 33
cgcggatcct tacttcctag cgtctgtcat gaaactg 37

<210> 34
<211> 7117
<212> DNA
<213> E. coli

<400> 34
cccgggcact tccggggcat gagtatgtga tatccggggc tgcaccccgg accccgccaa 60
cacatcacgg gccacaaaat tttttgtggc ccgctctgcg ttttctaagt gttatcctc 120
ctgatttcta aaaaattttc cacctgaact tgacagaaaa aacgatgacg agtacttttt 180
gatctgtaca taaacccagt ggttttatgt acagtattaa tcgtgtaatc aattgtttta 240
acgcttaaaa gagggaattt ttatgagcgg tggcgatgga cgcggccata acacgggcgc 300
gcatagcaca agtggtaaca ttaatggtgg cccgaccggg cttggtgtag gtggtggtgc 360
ttctgatggc tccggatgga gttcggaaaa taacccgtgg ggtggtggtt ccggtagcgg 420
cattcactgg ggtggtggtt ccggtcatgg taatggcggg gggaatggta attccggtgg 480
tggttcggga acaggcggta atctgtcagc agtagctgcg ccagtggcat ttggttttcc 540
ggcactttcc actccaggag ctggcggtct ggcggtcagt atttcagcgg gagcattatc 600
ggcagctatt gctgatatta tggctgccct gaaaggaccg tttaaatttg gtctttgggg 660
ggtggcttta tatggtgtat tgccatcaca aatagcgaaa gatgacccca atatgatgtc 720
aaagattgtg acgtcattac ccgcagatga tattactgaa tcacctgtca gttcattacc 780
tctcgataag gcaacagtaa acgtaaatgt tcgtgttgtt gatgatgtaa aagacgagcg 840
acagaatatt tcggttgttt caggtgttcc gatgagtgtt ccggtggttg atgcaaaacc 900
taccgaacgt ccgggtgttt ttacggcatc aattccaggt gcacctgttc tgaatatttc 960
agttaataac agtacgccag cagtacagac attaagccca ggtgttacaa ataatactga 1020
taaggatgtt cgcccggcag gatttactca gggtggtaat accagggatg cagttattcg 1080
attcccgaag gacagcggtc ataatgccgt atatgtttca gtgagtgatg ttcttagccc 1140
tgaccaggta aaacaacgtc aagatgaaga aaatcgccgt cagcaggaat gggatgctac 1200
gcatccggtt gaagcggctg agcgaaatta tgaacgcgcg cgtgcagagc tgaatcaggc 1260
aaatgaagat gttgccagaa atcaggagcg acaggctaaa gctgttcagg tttataattc 1320
gcgtaaaagc gaacttgatg cagcgaataa aactcttgct gatgcaatag ctgaaataaa 1380
acaatttaat cgatttgccc atgacccaat ggctggcggt cacagaatgt ggcaaatggc 1440
cgggcttaaa gcccagcggg cgcagacgga tgtaaataat aagcaggctg catttgatgc 1500
tgctgcaaaa gagaagtcag atgctgatgc tgcattgagt tctgctatgg aaagcaggaa 1560
gaagaaagaa gataagaaaa ggagtgctga aaataatttta aacgatgaaa agaataagcc 1620
cagaaaaggt tttaaagatt acgggcatga ttatcatcca gctccgaaaa ctgagaatat 1680
taaagggctt ggtgatctta agcctgggat accaaaaaca ccaaagcaga atggtggtgg 1740
aaaacgcaag cgctggactg gagataaagg gcgtaagatt tatgagtggg attctcagca 1800
tggtgagctt gaggggtatc gtgccagtga tggtcagcat cttggctcat ttgaccctaa 1860
aacaggcaat cagttgaaag gtccagatcc gaaacgaaat atcaagaaat atctttgaga 1920
ggaagttatg ggacttaaat tggatttaac ttggtttgat aaaagtacag aagattttaa 1980
gggtgaggag tattcaaaag attttggaga tgacggttca gttatggaaa gtctaggtgt 2040
gcctttaag gataatgtta ataacggttg ctttgatgtt atagctgaat gggtaccttt 2100
gctacaacca tactttaatc atcaaattga tatttccgat aatgagtatt ttgtttcgtt 2160
tgattatcgt gatggtgatt ggtgatcaaa tattatcagg gatgagttga tatacgggct 2220
tctagtgttc atggatgaac gctggagcct ccaaatgtag aaatgttata ttttttattg 2280
agttcttggt tataattgct ccgcaatgat ttaaataagc attatttaaa acattctcag 2340
gagaggtgaa ggtggagcta aaaaaaagta ttggtgatta cactgaaacc gaattcaaaa 2400
aatttattga agacatcatc aattgtgaag gtgatgaaaa aaaacaggat gataacctcg 2460

```
agtattttat aaatgttact gagcatccta gtggttctga tctgatttat tacccagaag    2520
gtaataatga tggtagccct gaaggtgtta ttaaagagat taaagaatgg cgagccgcta    2580
acggtaagtc aggatttaaa cagggctgaa atatgaatgc cggttgttta tggatgaatg    2640
gctggcattc tttcacaaca aggagtcgtt atgaaaaaaa taacagggat tattttattg    2700
cttcttgcag tcattattct gtctgcatgt caggcaaact atatccggga tgttcagggc    2760
gggaccgtat ctccgtcatc aacagctgaa gtgaccggat tagcaacgca gtaacccgaa    2820
atcctcttg acaaaaacaa agcgtgtcag gctgatttctg atgcgctttt tttttgaaat    2880
gtcacaaaaa ttccatgtgg gagatgggat ctaaaatcct cgtgcagaac tttccatcca    2940
gggggagaaa acttgtcgtt ttgagccgtt cggtgttcag aacgcacgaa acgatcgcg     3000
cgcatcgctt tcgtgaatag ttatgcaggc ccctgaaaac gatttctgacg cgttttttcg    3060
gttttgcctg gtgttttcct gtctttttgc gtttttgcg tcagaacgcg tctgagggcg    3120
ttttaagggg tgcgtacaac gggagttatg gtaaatggat cggtttttcg ggaaggatcg    3180
acaggatttg ccgttgggtg tagtgtaagc gactgaaaaa caaacgcccc gtaaatcgtg    3240
ctctcaccgc caagattgat cacgaaatta cagggcgccg ggttccgcgt ttcccgatgg    3300
gaaagcgcgg ttagttaaac tgtgtaccga gagaaatcgt atcacatgag cgccgtactt    3360
caacgcttca gggaaaaatt accgcacaaa ccgtactgta cgaacgattt cgcgtacggc    3420
gttcgcattc tgccgaaaaa cattgccatt cttgcccgtt tcatccagca gaaccagcca    3480
catgcactgt actggcttcc ctttgacgtg gaccggacgg gggcatcaat cgactggagc    3540
gaccggaatt gtccggcccc gaacatcacc gtaaaaaatc cccgtaacgg gcacgcgcat    3600
ctgctctacg cgctcgccct tcctgtgaga actgcgccgg atgcatcggc ttcggcgctc    3660
agatacgctg ccgctattga gcgtgcgttg tgtgaaaaac tgggcgcgga tgtgaattac    3720
agcggcctga tctgcaaaaa tccgtgccac cctgaatggc aggaagtgga atggcgcgag    3780
gaaccctaca ctctcgacga actggctgat tatctcgatt tgagcgcctc agcgcgccgt    3840
agcgtcgata aaaattacgg gctggggcga aactgctatc tgttcgaaaa gggccgtaaa    3900
tgggcttacc gggctattcg tcagggctgg ccggcatttct cacaatggct tgatgcggtg    3960
attcagcgtg tcgaaatgta caacgcatcg ctccccgttc cgctttcacc tcctgaatgt    4020
cgggctattg gcaagagtat tgcgaaatac acgcacagga acttcacgcc ggaaactttc    4080
gcacagtatg tggctgatac gcacacgcca gaaattcagg ctacacgcgg tcgcaagggc    4140
ggttctaagt ctaagcgcgg cacagtagct acatcagcac gcacgctgaa accttgggag    4200
aaattaggga tcagtcgcgc ctggtattac caactgaaaa aacgaggtct cgtagagtag    4260
accaaataag cctatatcag ataacagcgc ctttttggcg ccttttgag cagcttggtt     4320
tgttgctatt tccctcgttg aatcccgcaa tggcgcggct ttccgcatga ttgaggtggt    4380
agcgctcgcc gcagtctcat gaccgagcgt agcgagcgaa tgagcgagga agcgcaaagg    4440
cgtccggtgg tgcatgtggc acttacgcgc cgggggcttag tggttctgcg gtttccgcgg    4500
tggtctgggt agcttctcca gctcgttaat cagcggttgt agtcggttca catccacctg    4560
tcttgtgact tcctttcgca gaaactggag caggaacgca cgcagttgcg cttcttccgg    4620
cctccgtacc cttgccagca tggctgcccc cacaatgact ttttgcgccg tgtccaggct    4680
tcggctcttc gccttcaggc gctgtaatct ggcctcagct tcggcaatct tctgttcgag    4740
tgttctgctc atttcgtgac tccgtgcgcg gtgaaaaatc gcattttagc gcgtcactgg    4800
tagtttaaaa actaaactgg cataatgcac ggcacatcac gaagtgcgca cttatacaat    4860
ctccacttcg tttcgattgt gtgcggtctg cgacgctaaa agaaaacggc aaaaaggcat    4920
tacggcagaa atggcgattt atcatctcag catgaaaatc atttcgcgaa aaaacggcta    4980
cagtgctgtt gcttctgctg cctaccgttc cggctctgtc atacccgatg acgtaccgg     5040
attaatccac gattacaccc gtaaacgcgg cgttgatgat gcggtcattc tcaccctgc     5100
gaatgcaccg tcctggtgtg ttgaccgttc cgttctttgg aatgcggtcg agaaagccga    5160
acagcgccgg aactcccagc tggcaaggga ggttgaactc gccattcccc gtgagatttc    5220
ccgcgaggcc gcacgggaga ccgttctcgc tttgtccggg aaaactttgt cagtcgggcg    5280
atgattgccg atgtggcgtt ccatcacatg gaccggacca atccccatgc gcacatcatg    5340
ctgaccacga gagctgtcgg ggaaacggga ttcgcaggaa aggtcaggga tggaacgacc    5400
gggcactcgc cgagacgtgg cgcgcatcat gggctgacca tgcgaacaga gcgcttgcga    5460
acgccggcta ccaggaagag atagaccatc gttcatacga gcgtcaggga ctggagaaag    5520
cgccggcctt cacctcggaa aggctgcctg tgcgatggaa aaacggggaa tggaaacaga    5580
acgcggtgag cagaaccgtc tgattaacag ccttaacctg gaaatacagg tttcccgcac    5640
gcagcttgct ctcaggacgg ttcaggaaac gcagcgtaag cgggaactca gcgatgctgc    5700
acgtcgtgca gtggaagccc ttaacctgac cattcccgct gcgaatgcct cagcggatac    5760
cctgcgggaa ttcattgcca cgctgccgca ggaatgcggg aacgcgtggg agatgacccc    5820
ggagttcctg gcgatgagcg ggaaggtgaa cgacatcgaa cgtgagggga atgcgctgct    5880
gaaagagcag gccattctcg aaaaggagat gaccggactc aaaaaagcac gccctgtcgc    5940
```

gtcccttctg tcagagattc ccctgatgac atgggctgaa ccggaatacc gcaaaagaca 6000
actccgtttc ttggaaactc gggaaacaga ttgaatctct tcgccgcacc tacagggccg 6060
tgaaagaacg ggacattccc gcccgtcgtc aggcctttga aacgcagtgg aatacgtgga 6120
ttgcgccgga atggcagagc tgaaagaaaa actgtcagca cgggaagcgg agcggcgcag 6180
ggaggagccc gaagcggaag cgcgccggaa ggaacaggag catgaggcgc ggctgaaacg 6240
tcatgataac caccgtctga gccgtgaaac ggcattagtc ggggttatta cggagctggg 6300
gcgtgccaga gagccgggaa cgggcaggat aacccgctac atgatgttga gtaacagagc 6360
cggagaattc acggtatggg gtgatgagct ggcgcattac ccccagagtg ttcatgaccc 6420
ggtgaatgtt tacctgtcgc caggcggggc tgtgatggtc tcggatatac gtgagggaat 6480
gccagaatct catgagacga tggcgcggcc tgagcgtgtg agaatgtatt ccggtgcgac 6540
ggtccggcat gtactggaac agatgcgcca ggggtggccc tcttacggtt ttccggcgct 6600
gccgcatcac tggccggata atttttattt cagcgacgac cgcaggcccg tagcctctcc 6660
gctgccgtct gcgcaccggg tggacgtcac cgcttatgcg gcaccggagc aactcatgcc 6720
cgttgtattt tcgacagagc gaaacagcag gacgctgaat ctgctgttgt gcaaaggggc 6780
ggaggaagtg cttgtcggat ttgtgcgcca ggaggacggg ctgcgtcccg ttcttgcgct 6840
tccgtcgccg gattacagtc atctgatggt cagcaccatc acggagaacg gggtatgcct 6900
ggcaggttac ggagaagcta taaaccatga tgcggatact ccgtacccac cggaaccgca 6960
cctgatgcag ttccggctca aaggccatca tgacaggctt ttggctgctg tccacaaacc 7020
ggaagagatg ccggattatc tcttccgtca actcggtttt aatcagacct ggcatgagtg 7080
gaagcgggac gaacagcaca ggcaacaaca acgccgc 7117

<210> 35
<211> 30
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 35
gtgtcatgaa aatgggtaac caatggcaac 30

<210> 36
<211> 35
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 36
cacagagctc gcgctaacaa aacagcacaa gggag 35

<210> 37
<211> 37
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 37
gtgtccatgg ctaaaacatt attaatagct gcatcgc 37

<210> 38
<211> 29

<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 38
gtgtctgcag aactgactga attgagatg 29

<210> 39
<211> 37
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 39
gtgtagatct ttaagaccca ctttcacatt taagttg 37

<210> 40
<211> 30
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 40
cacaggatcc ttactgaacc gcgatccccg 30

<210> 41
<211> 40
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 41
gtgtgagctc gatcaaccag caagccgtta accctctgac 40

<210> 42
<211> 67
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 42
gtgtgcatgc ggggggccat ataggccggg gatttaaatg caaacgtccg ccgaaacgcc 60
gacgcac 67

<210> 43
<211> 71
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 43
gtgtgcatgc ggggttaatt aaggggcgg ccgcgtggta ttggttgaac cgacggtgct 60
catgacatcg c 71

<210> 44
<211> 37
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 44
gtgtctcgag gatatcattc tggcctctga cgttgtg 37

<210> 45
<211> 45
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 45
ttttttccat ggctattatg actgaaatcg ttgcagataa aacgg 45

<210> 46
<211> 46
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 46
ttttttaagc ttcccgggtc agacttcagg tacctcaaag agtgtc 46

<210> 47
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Forward primer

<400> 47
ccgctcgaga tgcacggctc caacaagctc cca 33

<210> 48
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Reverse primer

<400> 48
cgcggatcct taggcactcg ccttgagtgc ctg 33

<210> 49
<211> 102
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 49
gatcccatgg cttatggcag aaaaaaacgc cgtcagcgcc gtcgcatgaa cgcgctgcag 60
gaagataccc cgccgggccc gtccaccgtg tttcgcccgc cg 102

<210> 50
<211> 103
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 50
gggacagggt gatggtgatg cccgcgatgc cgatgcggat ttcgcggcaa tgcggggttt 60
ccagcgggcg ggaggaggtc ggcgggcgaa acacggtgga cgg 103

<210> 51
<211> 102
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 51
ggcatcgcgg gcatcaccat caccctgtcc ctgtgcggct gcgcgaacgc gcgcgcgccg 60
accctgcgct ccgcgaccgc ggataactcc gaaaacaccg gc 102

<210> 52
<211> 111
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 52
gcgatattcg gacggatcgc aggagcgttt tttggacggc ggtttcggct gatcggtgcg 60
cagatccggg acgtttttaa agccggtgtt ttcggagtta tccgcggtcg c 111

<210> 53
<211> 111
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 53
cctgcgatcc gtccgaatat cgcgtctccg aactgaaaga atccctgatc accaccaccc 60
cgtcccgccc gcgcaccgcc cgccgctgca tccgcctctg aaagcttcat g 111

<210> 54
<211> 41
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 54
catgaagctt tcagaggcgg atgcagcggc gggcggtgcg c 41

<210> 55
<211> 98
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 55
gatcccatgg ctcatcacca tcaccaccat tatggccgca aaaaacgccg tcagcgccgt 60
cgcatgaacg cgctgcagga agataccccg ccgggccc 98

<210> 56
<211> 100
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> Oligonucleotide

<400> 56
gatcccatgg ctaaaaagac ggctctggcg cttctgctct tgctgttagc gctgactagt 60
gtagcgcagg cctatggccg caaaaaacgc cgtcagcgcc 100

<210> 57
<211> 551
<212> DNA
<213> Bacteriophage

<220>
<221> CDS
<222> (7)...(408)

<221> modified_base
<222> (1)...(1)
<223> n=a, c, g, or t

<400> 57
nagacc atg gct tat ggc aga aaa aaa aga aga cag aga aga aga atg 48
Met Ala Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Met
1 5 10

```
aac gcg ctg cag gaa gat acc ccg ccg ggc ccg tcc acc gtg ttt cgc       96
Asn Ala Leu Gln Glu Asp Thr Pro Pro Gly Pro Ser Thr Val Phe Arg
 15                  20                  25                  30

ccg ccg acc tcc tcc cgc ccg ctg gaa acc ccg cat tgc cgc gaa atc      144
Pro Pro Thr Ser Ser Arg Pro Leu Glu Thr Pro His Cys Arg Glu Ile
                 35                  40                  45

cgc atc ggc atc gcg ggc atc acc atc acc ctg tcc ctg tgc ggc tgc      192
Arg Ile Gly Ile Ala Gly Ile Thr Ile Thr Leu Ser Leu Cys Gly Cys
             50                  55                  60

gcg aac gcg cgc gcg ccg acc ctg cgc tcc gcg acc gcg gat aac tcc      240
Ala Asn Ala Arg Ala Pro Thr Leu Arg Ser Ala Thr Ala Asp Asn Ser
         65                  70                  75

gaa aac acc ggc ttt aaa aac gtc ccg gat ctg cgc acc gat cag ccg      288
Glu Asn Thr Gly Phe Lys Asn Val Pro Asp Leu Arg Thr Asp Gln Pro
     80                  85                  90

aaa ccg ccg tcc aaa aaa cgc tcc tgc gat ccg tcc gaa tat cgc gtc      336
Lys Pro Pro Ser Lys Lys Arg Ser Cys Asp Pro Ser Glu Tyr Arg Val
 95                 100                 105                 110

tcc gaa ctg aaa gaa tcc ctg atc acc acc acc ccg tcc cgc ccg cgc      384
Ser Glu Leu Lys Glu Ser Leu Ile Thr Thr Thr Pro Ser Arg Pro Arg
                115                 120                 125

acc gcc cgc cgc tgc atc cgc ctc tgaaagcttg gctgttttgg cggatgagag      438
Thr Ala Arg Arg Cys Ile Arg Leu
            130

aagattttca gcctgataca gattaaatca gaacgcagaa gcggtctgat aaaacagaat      498
ttgcctggcg gcagtagcgc ggtggtccca cctgacccca tgccgaactc aga             551

      <210> 58
      <211> 134
      <212> PRT
      <213> Bacteriophage

      <400> 58
Met Ala Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Met Asn Ala
 1               5                  10                  15
Leu Gln Glu Asp Thr Pro Pro Gly Pro Ser Thr Val Phe Arg Pro Pro
            20                  25                  30
Thr Ser Ser Arg Pro Leu Glu Thr Pro His Cys Arg Glu Ile Arg Ile
        35                  40                  45
Gly Ile Ala Gly Ile Thr Ile Thr Leu Ser Leu Cys Gly Cys Ala Asn
    50                  55                  60
Ala Arg Ala Pro Thr Leu Arg Ser Ala Thr Ala Asp Asn Ser Glu Asn
65                  70                  75                  80
Thr Gly Phe Lys Asn Val Pro Asp Leu Arg Thr Asp Gln Pro Lys Pro
                85                  90                  95
Pro Ser Lys Lys Arg Ser Cys Asp Pro Ser Glu Tyr Arg Val Ser Glu
            100                 105                 110
Leu Lys Glu Ser Leu Ile Thr Thr Thr Pro Ser Arg Pro Arg Thr Ala
        115                 120                 125
```

```
Arg Arg Cys Ile Arg Leu
    130
```

<210> 59
<211> 444
<212> DNA
<213> Bacteriophage

<220>
<221> modified_base
<222> (1)...(1)
<223> n=a, c, g, or t

<221> CDS
<222> (7)...(427)

<400> 59

```
nagacc atg gct cat cac cat cac cac cat tat ggc cgc aaa aaa cgc        48
       Met Ala His His His His His His Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys Arg
         1               5                  10

cgt cag cgc cgt cgc atg aac gcg ctg cag gaa gat acc ccg ccg ggc        96
Arg Gln Arg Arg Arg Met Asn Ala Leu Gln Glu Asp Thr Pro Pro Gly
 15                  20                  25                  30

ccg tcc acc gtg ttt cgc ccg ccg acc tcc tcc cgc ccg ctg gaa acc       144
Pro Ser Thr Val Phe Arg Pro Pro Thr Ser Ser Arg Pro Leu Glu Thr
            35                  40                  45

ccg cat tgc cgc gaa atc cgc atc ggc atc gcg ggc atc acc atc acc       192
Pro His Cys Arg Glu Ile Arg Ile Gly Ile Ala Gly Ile Thr Ile Thr
        50                  55                  60

ctg tcc ctg tgc ggc tgc gcg aac gcg cgc gcg ccg acc ctg cgc tcc       240
Leu Ser Leu Cys Gly Cys Ala Asn Ala Arg Ala Pro Thr Leu Arg Ser
    65                  70                  75

gcg acc gcg gat aac tcc gaa aac acc ggc ttt aaa aac gtc ccg gat       288
Ala Thr Ala Asp Asn Ser Glu Asn Thr Gly Phe Lys Asn Val Pro Asp
 80                  85                  90

ctg cgc acc gat cag ccg aaa ccg ccg tcc aaa aaa cgc tcc tgc gat       336
Leu Arg Thr Asp Gln Pro Lys Pro Pro Ser Lys Lys Arg Ser Cys Asp
 95                 100                 105                 110

ccg tcc gaa tat cgc gtc tcc gaa ctg aaa gaa tcc ctg atc acc acc       384
Pro Ser Glu Tyr Arg Val Ser Glu Leu Lys Glu Ser Leu Ile Thr Thr
                115                 120                 125

acc ccg tcc cgc ccg cgc acc gcc cgc cgc tgc atc cgc ctc t             427
Thr Pro Ser Arg Pro Arg Thr Ala Arg Arg Cys Ile Arg Leu
        130                 135                 140

gaaagcttgg ctgtttt                                                   444
```

<210> 60
<211> 140
<212> PRT

<213> Bacteriophage

<400> 60

```
Met Ala His His His His His His Tyr Gly Arg Lys Lys Arg Arg Gln
 1               5                  10                  15
Arg Arg Arg Met Asn Ala Leu Gln Glu Asp Thr Pro Pro Gly Pro Ser
            20                  25                  30
Thr Val Phe Arg Pro Pro Thr Ser Ser Arg Pro Leu Glu Thr Pro His
        35                  40                  45
Cys Arg Glu Ile Arg Ile Gly Ile Ala Gly Ile Thr Ile Thr Leu Ser
    50                  55                  60
Leu Cys Gly Cys Ala Asn Ala Arg Ala Pro Thr Leu Arg Ser Ala Thr
65                  70                  75                  80
Ala Asp Asn Ser Glu Asn Thr Gly Phe Lys Asn Val Pro Asp Leu Arg
                85                  90                  95
Thr Asp Gln Pro Lys Pro Pro Ser Lys Lys Arg Ser Cys Asp Pro Ser
            100                 105                 110
Glu Tyr Arg Val Ser Glu Leu Lys Glu Ser Leu Ile Thr Thr Thr Pro
        115                 120                 125
Ser Arg Pro Arg Thr Ala Arg Arg Cys Ile Arg Leu
    130                 135                 140
```

<210> 61
<211> 1565
<212> DNA
<213> Salmonella

<400> 61

```
gatatcattc tggcctctga cgttgtgatg gtcgcacgtg gcgatctggg cgttgaaatc      60
ggcgatccgg agctggttgg tatccagaaa gcgctgattc gccgtgcgcg tcagctaaac     120
cgcgcagtca tcaccgcaac gcaaatgatg gagtcgatga tcaccaaccc gatgccgacc     180
cgtgcggaag tgatggacgt ggcgaacgcc gtcctggatg gcacggatgc ggttatgctg     240
tctgccgaaa ccgcagccgg tcagtatcct tctgaaaccg ttgccgcaat ggcgcgcgtc     300
tgcctgggcg cagaaaaaat ccccagcatc aatgtgtcta aacaccgtct cgacgtgcag     360
ttcgacaacg ttgaagaagc cattgccatg tctgcgatgt atgcggcaaa ccatctgaaa     420
ggcgttaccg cgatcatcac catgacggaa tccggtcgta ccgcgctaat gacttcccgt     480
atcagctccg gcctgccgat tttcgccatg tcgcgccatg aacgcacgct gaacctgacc     540
gcgctctatc gcggagtaac gccggtgcat tttgatagcg cggctgatgg cgttgtcgcg     600
gcacatgaag ctgttaatct gctgcgcgat aaagggtatc tggtttccgg cgacctggtt     660
atcgtgaccc agggcgatgt catgagcacc gtcggttcaa ccaataccac gcggccgccc     720
ccttaattaa ccccgcatgc ggggggccat ataggccggg gatttaaatg caaacgtccg     780
ccgaaacgcc gacgcactgt gttccagata tagtcaaaaa ccggattacc ctgattatga     840
aacatcgccg ccatttttttg cccctgagag gccatcagca tggctggaat gtcgacgccc     900
cagccatgcg gtacgagaaa aatgactttt tcgtcgttac gacgcatctc ctcgataatc     960
tccagacctt cccagtcaac acgctgttga attttttttcg gaccgcgcat cgccaactca    1020
gccatcatcg ccattgcctg tggcgcggtg gcgaacatct catcgacaat cgcttcgcgc    1080
tcagcttcgc tacgctgcgg aaagcacaac gacagattaa ttagcgcccg gcgacgagaa    1140
ctcttcccca gccgtccggc aaaacgcccc agcgtcgcca gcaaagggtc gcggaatgat    1200
gccggtgtta atgcgatccc cgccattgcc gccgcgccca accaggcgcc ccaatactgt    1260
ggatagcgaa aggatttttc gaattcaggg atatactcac tattattttt tttggtttcc    1320
atgcttttcc agggtctgct gacgcgaaaa ggaattgtga atagtgtagc gacgtctgcg    1380
tctcacacaa aacaaaaaag ccggcacaca tcgcgtaccg gctctgtcag cgcatttgtt    1440
aatcgaagcg cagttgcggc agaacctctt tcacctgtgc caggtattca cgacgatctg    1500
accccgtcag accttccgtg cgcggcaatt ttgctgtcag agggttaacg gcttgctggt    1560
tgatc                                                               1565
```